



Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario

First Approximation and Its Application

SCSS Field Guide FG-02







Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario

First Approximation and Its Application

SCSS Field Guide FG-02 September 1998

Authors:

Harold Lee, Wasyl Bakowsky, John Riley, Jane Bowles, Michael Puddister, Peter Uhlig, Sean McMurray

Canadian Cataloguing in Publication Data

Main entry under title: Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario: First Approximation and its Application

(SCSS Field Guide; FG-02) Includes bibliographical references ISBN 0-7778-7263-3 OMNR# 51146

.75 k P.R. 98/10/29 .5 k R.P. 00/05/27 1.4 k R.P. 02/09/10

1. Land use-Ontario, Southern-Classification. 2. Land use-Environmental aspects-Ontario, Southern-Planning. I. Lee, Harold Thomas, 1964 -. II. Ontario, Southcentral Science Section-III Series.

QH106.205E26

333.7'09713

C98-964009-4

Published by:

Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources Southcentral Science Section Science Development and Transfer Branch 3301 Trout Lake Road North Bay. Ontario. Canada P1A 4L7 Phone (705) 475-5560 Fax (705) 475-5570

Copies of this publication are available from:

The Federation of Ontario Naturalists 355 Lesmill Road Don Mills. Ontario. Canada M3B 2W8 Phone (416) 444-8419 Fax (416) 444-9866

This publication should be cited as:

Lee, H.T., W.D. Bakowsky, J. Riley, J. Bowles, M. Puddister, P. Uhlig and S. McMurray. 1998. Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario: First Approximation and Its Application. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southcentral Science Section, Science Development and Transfer Branch. SCSS Field Guide FG-02.

Key Words:

ecology, Southern Ontario, communities, terrestrial, wetland, aquatic, classification, land classification, Carolinian, Great Lakes-St. Lawrence forest region, southern deciduous forest

Cette publication spécialisée est disponible en anglais seulement.

Cover Photo: Gillies Lake, Cabot Head, Bruce County; P.S.G. Kor

Acknowledgements

The Ecological Land Classification (ELC), along with the tools to apply it, has been in development for four years. The following groups and individuals have contributed to the research, development, reviews and field that of the ELC and its applications.

Southern Region ELC Working Group (1994-1996)

Wasyl Bakowsky Don Cuddy Peter Neave Eric Boysen Jim Hamilton John Riley Kerry Coleman Harold Lee Peter Uhlig

Provincial ELC Working Group

Jim Baker Sean McMurray Richard Sims
Brenda Chambers Brian Potter Kim Taylor
Harold Lee Gerry Racey Peter Uhlig

Pilot Project Team

Development of the approaches and tools to apply the ELC to planning have come from a joint pilot project with Credit Valley Conservation (CVC), the Forest Resource Inventory Section, ELC and a private consultant. The Pilot Team was responsible for developing a model approach to applying the ELC to watershed planning and the requirements to fulfill the challenges of the CVC's Natural Heritage Project.

Bob Baker Liam Marray Scott Sampson
Wasyl Bakowsky Sean McMurray Nicolle Smith
Jane Bowles Brian Morber Peter Uhlig
Harold Lee Michael Puddister
Jennifer Line Murray Radford

Contributors and Reviewers

The following people have contributed time and research, and have reviewed the Southern Ontario ELC.

Gary Allen Dr. Don Faber-Langendoen Patrick McLean Dr. Peter W. Ball Todd Farrell Todd Noms Mike Oldham Tom Beechey Al Hamis Dr. Jane Bowles Jamo Jalava Heather Stewart David Bradley Dr. Doug Larson Don Sutherland Dr. Terry Carleton Dale Leadbeater Steve Varga Dr. Bill Crins Dr. Uta Mathes-Sears

The Soil Description section is an excerpt from the Field Manual for Describing Soils in Ontario, 4th Edition (Ontario Centre for Soil Resource Evaluation, 1993) and from the Field Guide to Forest Ecosystems of Northeastern Ontario (McCarthy et al., 1994).

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements Table of Contents	Ξ,
List of Tables	
List of Figures	. IN
List of Figures	٠,
About This Manual	
Part I: Ecological Land Classification (ELC)	
1. Background	. 5
ELC in Canada	
ELC in Ontario	
Regional Context	. 8
Development of the ELC in Southern Ontario	
Step 1 - Collating Existing Information Sources	10
Step 2 - Analysis and Organization of Existing Information	11
Step 3 - Using New Quantitative Field Data	11
Steps 4 and on - Further Refinement through Iterations	12
Field Trials	13
A A Laboratory A Constitution	
2. Orientation to the Classification	
Organization of the ELC Framework	
Definitions of ELC Levels	
Site Region	
System	
Community Class	
Community Series	
Ecosite	
Vegetation Type	
Conventions and Terminology	
Vegetation Terms and Conventions	18
Environmental Terms and Conventions	21
3. ELC Keys	27
Key to Systems	
Key to Terrestrial Ecosites	
Key to Wetland Ecosites	
Key to Aquatic Ecosites	
ney to require a country	•
4. ELC Community Tables	37
Using the ELC Community Tables	36
Terrestrial Community Tables	
Beach / Bar	
Sand Dune	
Bluff	
Cliff	
Talus	44
Alvar	45
Rock Barren	
Crevice and Cave	48
Sand Barren	
Tallgrass Prairie, Savannah and Woodland	50
Forest	52
Cultural	88
Wetland Community Tables	70
Swamp	
Fen	81
Bog	82
Marsh	83
Aquatic Community Tables	88
Open Water	88
Shallow Water	88
5. ELC Photo Album	88

Part II: Application	^
Application of This Manual	40
6. Context for the ELC	10
Current Challendes	40
Ecological Land-Use Planning	10
Park Planning	401
Forest Management	100
Private Land Stewardship	10
Restoring Birdiwarsity	100
Restoring Biodiversity	100
Research	106
7 How to Apply the ELC	
7. How to Apply the ELC	107
Process of Application	108
9 Description Francisco	
8. Description Framework	113
Describion Framework	
TOW to Apply Description Framework	
viola keys for Description Framework	147
System	447
Olle	440
Substrate	440
l opographic Feature	140
HISTORY	120
Cover	400
Plant Form	. 120
Community.	. 121
Diagrammatic Keys Linking the ELC Description and Classification	. 122
Frameworks	
	. 124
9. Field Sampling Methods and Data Cards	
Overview of ELC Field Sampling Methods	. 135
Site and Visit Identification	138
Stand and Soil Characteristics	. 136
Stand and Soil Characteristics	. 137
Plant Species List	. 138
Community Description and Classification	. 140
Disturbance Wilding	. 144
Wildlife	. 146
10. Soil Description	
10. Soil Description	. 153
rexular mande	484
TEXTURE FIRM LESTS	
FIGU 1651 Characteristics of Lexture Class	4.00
Linger Assessment of Soil Texture	450
CHOCOVE LEXING IN STRUMED WILDERS SOME (CHART V)	400
Determining Soil Moisture Regime and Drainage	444
Our Musture Regime for Deep Soils (Chart R)	400
Deep soil Dialitage Class (Chart C)	400
Quick Chart for Determining Soil Moisture Class	474
11. Case Study	172
Credit Valley Conservation	173
References	400
Literature Cred	400
Glossary	190
Appendices	
Appendix A. Data Codes	
Appendix B: Plant Species List Appendix C: Plant Species List	212
Appendix C: Area Percentage Charts	213
Appendix D: Using a Wedge Priem	218
Appendix D: Using a Wedge Prism Appendix E: New Ecosite and Vegetation Type Report Card	220

List of Tables

Table 1.	The proposed spatial hierarchy of Ecological Land Classification units, scales, recommended tools and application for Ontario (modified from Racey et al. 1996; based on Environmental Conservation Service Task	
	Force 1981 and Wiken 1986)	-
Table 2	Cover value ranges used to define specific terms used in the ELC.	
Table 2. Table 3.	Moisture regime terms, based on OIP 1985 moisture regime standards	
		. 22
Table 4.	The ELC substrate texture classes and their associated component	
	textures; based on OIP 1985 standards. Soil texture classes are the	
	more generalized categories of soil texture used in the ELC and referred	
	to in the ELC Community Tables	. 23
Table 5.	The defining characteristics and examples of the three rock types used in	
	the ELC.	
		. 24
Table 6.	Drainage codes (OIP 1985)	. 24
Table 7.	The slope position codes, their terms and what they mean (modified from	
	OIP 1985)	. 25
Table 8.	The wetland categories, their definitions and the Wetness Index; based	
	on Oldham et al. (1995)	. 26
Table 9.	ELC Common Scales and Applications	
Table 10	. How to apply the tools and techniques in this manual to accomplish the	
	Objectives in Figure 6	110
Table 10	continued. How to apply the tools and techniques in this manual to	
	accomplish the Objectives in Figure 6	111
Table 11	. The eight fields that make up the ELC Polygon Description Framework,	
	along with their associated defined range of conditions	115
Table 12	. A demonstration of how to assign conditions to a polygon using the	
	Description Framework. The two examples here show how conditions	
	are assigned (dark shading) to the description fields. They also	
	demonstrate how descriptions for different Sugar Maple forests could	
	vary, in spite of assigning them the same classification according to the	
	ELC.	116
Table 13	Codes used to stratify vegetation according to layers.	
	. Codes used in estimating the abundance of plant species within the	130
12016 14		120
T-61- 45	polygon. Height (HT) codes used to describe vegetation within polygon.	440
		140
l able 16	. Cover codes used to estimate vegetation cover (i.e., absolute cover) by layer.	444
Table 47	True sine aleana Danasanta DBU (diameter at hereat haight: 4.2 m	14
Table 17	. Tree size classes. Represents DBH (diameter at breast height; 1.3 m	
-	above ground) measured in cm.	141
Table 18	. Abundance codes for standing snags and deadfall, along with their definitions.	
T-61- 40	Onder for any order on and their any older definitions / advanted forms	142
i able 19	. Codes for community age and their associated definitions (adapted from	
-	National Vegetation Working Group 1990)	144
Table 20	Beaufort Wind Scale (adapted from Whittow 1984)	140
Table 21	. Steps to Applying the ELC	176

List of Figures

	2100 017 194100	_
Figure 1.	Maps showing the geographical area to which this manual and the Southern Ontario ELC are applicable. Site Region lines according to Jalava et al. 1997.	. 9
Figure 2.	Schematic representation of the iterative approach used to develop the ELC in Southern Ontario.	12
Figure 3.	Representation of specific absolute cover values used to define and distinguish ELC communities. Refer to Appendix C for more cover	
	charts.	19
Figure 4. Figure 5.	Diagrammatic representation of cover and how to assess it	20
Figure 6.	Units	38
Eiguro 7	Diagrammatic Key, using the Description Framework fields and their	109
Figure 7.	attributes, leading to ELC Community Tables. Follow the Figure number to the next key.	125
Figure 8.	Diagrammatic Key for Terrestrial Communities on Mineral Soil	126
Figure 9.	Diagrammatic Key for Terrestrial Communities on Parent Mineral Material	127
Figure 10.	Diagrammatic Key for Terrestrial Communities on Bedrock (one of two Figures).	128
Figure 11.	Diagrammatic Key for Terrestrial Communities on Bedrock, continued from Figure 10.	129
Figure 12.	Diagrammatic Key for Wetland Communities in Shallow Water	130
Figure 13.	Diagrammatic Key for Wetland Communities on Organic Substrates	131
Figure 14.	Diagrammatic Key for Wetland Communities on Mineral Soil, Parent	
	Mineral Material and Bedrock Substrates	132
Figure 15.	Diagrammatic Key for Aquatic Communities in Shallow Water and Open Water.	133
Figure 16.	Diagrammatic representation of the core area of the polygon used for documenting the Plant Species List.	138
Figure 17.	Diagrammatic representation of inclusions and complexes	143
	Credit River Valley, southeast of the Village of Alton, Peel Region	180
•	Forks of the Credit Provincial Park in the Town of Caledon, Peel Region.	181
Figure 20.	Air photo example of pilot area	182
Figure 21.	GIS version of pilot area	183
	Stand and Soil Characteristics Data Card	184
	Plant Species List Data Card	185
	Community Description and Classification Data Card	186
	Management / Disturbance Data Card	187
	Wildlife Data Card	188
rigure 27.	Diagram showing the wedge prism and how it deflects light by a critical angle.	220
Figure 28.	Diagram showing how to determine whether a tree is IN, OUT or BORDERLINE.	221
Figure 29.	Diagram showing how the critical angle of the wedge prism is used to judge whether a particular tree is counted as IN, BORDERLINE or	
Figure 30	OUT when doing a sweep around a sample point	221
.guis ou.	angle (perpendicular) to the line of sight.	222
Figure 31.	Diagram showing how to compensate for slopes when counting trees using the wedge prism. Rotate the prism to match the angle (i.e., x)	
	between the ground slope and the horizontal.	222

iν

v

About This Manual

This manual presents the tools and techniques that have been developed for the consistent description, identification, classification and mapping of ecological land units in Southern Ontario. This manual has been organized into two parts and contains the following components:

- Part I Ecological Land Classification
 - Background
 - 2. Orientation to the Classification
 - ELC Keys
 - 4. ELC Community Tables
 - ELC Photo Album

- Part II Application
 - 6. Context for the ELC
 - 7. How to Apply the ELC
 - 8. Description Framework
 - Field Sampling Methods and Data Cards
 - 10. Soil Description
 - 11. Case Study

This first approximation of the ELC is based on an analysis of over 4,000 descriptions of documented communities. For this first approximation, the more natural, less anthropogenic communities found in Southern Ontario have been emphasized. However, better identification and resolution of the more cultural or anthropogenic communities will follow in subsequent editions of the ELC, as more data are collected, analyzed and incorporated into the classification.

The approach to applying the ELC was developed through a cooperative pilot project among the Ecological Land Classification program, Credit Valley Conservation, the Natural Heritage Information Centre, the Forest Resource Inventory Section of the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (OMNR) and Jane Bowles (private consultant). It was developed to meet the current needs of ecosystem management and ecological land-use planning.

The ELC presented here should not be considered static; instead, it will develop, over time, through progressive iterations. Expect the ELC to be refined through further analysis and field testing as additional ELC units are described and sampled. Practitioners are encouraged to submit community descriptions and data not currently found in the ELC to the ELC program for review and possible incorporation.

This manual is the first in a series of ELC-related publications. There will be two subsequent publications: one will relate to the data that have been collated and put into a standardized database; the second will be a series of community factsheets to act as a reference source for the ELC. These publications are as follows:

Bakowsky, W.D., H.T. Lee, and J.L. Riley. In prep. Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario: Catalogue of Documented Community Descriptions. Natural Heritage Information Centre. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources. Peterborough, Ontario.

Lee, H.T. In prep. Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario: Community Factsheets. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southcentral Science Section, Science Development and Transfer Branch. SCSS FG-03.

Furthermore, a database has been developed, in ACCESS 95 format, to facilitate the application of this manual. This database allows practitioners to enter, query and manage natural heritage information. This database will also provide a link to the Natural Heritage Information Centre's plant and wildlife species lists and codes, community codes and ranks (Bakowsky 1998) and will allow determinations of site quality using floristic quality assessment (Oldham et al. 1995). This database is available and can be downloaded from the following internet web site:

http://www.mnr.gov.on.ca/MNR/nhic/veg/lists/elc.html

Part I: Ecological Land Classification (ELC)

3 —

1. Background

ELC in Canada

Since the early 1950s, there has been considerable work done across Canada to develop integrated, ecological approaches to land-unit description and classification (see Bailey et al. 1978; Sims and Uhlig 1992; Uhlig and Baker 1994 for useful reviews). In Canada, this integrated approach to surveying and classifying land and resources has been called Ecological Land Classification (ELC). The goal of such classification schemes is to identify recurring ecological patterns on the landscape in order to reduce complex natural variation to a reasonable number of meaningful ecosystem units (Bailey et al. 1978).

The pioneering work of Hills (1952, 1958) in Ontario, Krajina (1965) in British Columbia and national-level work by Rowe (1962, 1971, 1972; Rowe and Sheard 1981) has provided much of the conceptual basis for developing Ecological Land Classifications in Canada. Hills and other authors have defined ELC in terms of spatial hierarchies (Hills 1958; Bailey 1983, 1987; Bailey et al. 1978; Wickware and Rubec 1989a). Hills's approach designated functionally and spatially related units; from broad to fine scale they are Site Region, Site District, Landscape Unit, Site Type and Site Phase. Hills's hierarchical framework was capable of integrating resource inventories at various scales and it has been used for a variety of purposes by the Ministry of Natural Resources to guide planning and management. The reader is encouraged to consult Sims (1992) and Sims and Uhlig (1992) for recent compilations of the history of this pioneering work.

In Ontario, the ELC program has used Hills's work as a bench-mark, a basis upon which to build quantitatively based ecological units at the site-level scale. This modern effort follows the work of the Canada Committee on Ecological Land Classification (CCELC). The CCELC has generated a uniform terminology and descriptions for the hierarchical levels of the Canadian ecosystem classification system. The CCELC has set six hierarchical levels including Ecozone, Ecoprovince, Ecoregion, Ecodistrict, Ecosite and Ecoelement (Environmental Conservation Service Task Force 1981; Wiken 1986; see Table 1). The Ecological Land Classification program in Ontario is developing a quantitative ecological hierarchy using the levels set out by the CCELC (Sims and Uhlig 1992; Uhlig and Baker 1994). The levels in this proposed hierarchy, along with their operating scale and their applications, are summarized in Table 1.

Many jurisdictions have developed ecological classification schemes, including British Columbia (Krajina 1965; Pojar et al. 1987; Klinka et al. 1991; Meidinger and Pojar 1991), Alberta (Corns and Annas 1986), Ontario (see Sims and Uhlig 1992 for review), Newfoundland (see Meades and Roberts 1992 for review) and many areas in the United States (e.g., Bailey 1976, 1980, 1987; Reschke 1990; Nelson 1987; Kotar et al. 1988). Ecozones to Ecodistricts have been defined and mapped across Canada (Wickware and Rubec 1989b).

In Northern and Central Ontario, the Forest Ecosystem Classifications (FEC) have been developed using the baseline already established by earlier landscape and stand studies (Jones et al. 1983; Merchant et al. 1989; Sims et al. 1989; McCarthy et al. 1994; Chambers et al. 1997). These products are the first step towards developing a quantitative ELC hierarchy in Ontario. Through the analysis of data collected in thousands of ELC plots, the Ecosite level in the ELC hierarchy has been well established. In general, the derivation of Ecosites is based on the establishment of identifiable and recurring patterns among analytically derived Vegetation Types and Soil Types (Racey et al. 1996; Chambers et al. 1997). The ELC approach provides a framework whereby ecological units are delineated on the basis of the most stable and significant characteristics of the ecosystem.

Table 1. The proposed spatial hierarchy of Ecological Land Classification units, scales, recommended tools and application for Ontario (modified from Racey et al. 1996; based on Environmental Conservation Service Task Force 1981 and Wiken 1986).

Classification Unit ¹	Appropriate Scale ²	Recommended Tools ³	Example of Management Applications
Ecozone	1 3,000,000 10,000-1,000,000 km²	Wiken (1986)	Ecological context for Ontano; planning; policy
Ecoprovince	1 1,000,000 10,000-100,000 km²	Wiken (1986)	Ecological context for Ontario, planning; policy
Ecoregion	1:500,000 1000-10,000 km²	Hills's Site Regions of Ontario (Hills 1961, Burger 1993)	Strategic planning at regional or sub-regional levels; policy
Ecodistnct	1:250,000-1.500,000 100-1000 km²	Hills's Site Districts of Ontario (Hills 1961)	Strategic planning at sub- regional level, watershed plans; policy
Ecosection	1 100,000-1 250,000 1000-10,000 ha	Ontario Land Inventory (OMNR 1977), Physiography of Southern Ontario (Chapman and Putnam 1984)	Major landform contributions for forest prime land, broad habitat trends, watershed and subwatershed plans
Ecosite	1 10,000-1 20,000 10-100 ha	Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario. First Approximation and Its Application	Ecosystem mapping; conservation; inventory; regional planning; evaluation; silvicultural ground rules, wildlife habitat; subwatershed plans
Eccelement	1 2,000-1 10,000 100-100,000 m ²	Vegetation Type in the Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario. First Approximation and Its Application	Site and stand level research, inventory, development proposal; environmental impact assessment; evaluation; conservation

Notes

- Units according to the Canada Committee on Ecological Land Classification (CCELC) (Environmental Conservation Service Task Force 1981; Wiken 1986).
- Appropriate scales are identified, first in terms of appropriate cartographic scale, then in terms of typical size or resolution.
- Not all levels of ELC are represented by products suited for use in Southern Ontario.
 Recommended tools include existing maps, classifications and publications available to land managers that represent ecological features at appropriate scales.

ELC in Ontario

The goal of the provincial Ecological Land Classification (ELC) program is to establish a comprehensive and consistent province-wide approach for ecosystem description, inventory and interpretation. The ELC framework is being designed to facilitate key conservation, planning and ecosystem management objectives, at various site to landscape scales of resolution (Uhlig and Baker 1994; Lee 1993).

The key focus of the ELC is to improve our ability to manage both natural resources and the information about those resources. Now, more than ever, we need a uniform and consistent way to identify, describe, name, map, manage and conserve important landscape patterns and communities (Riley and Mohr 1994). To accomplish this, all resource management partners will need a common framework by which to collect, organize, analyze and report on ecological information (Brownell and Larson 1995; Riley and Mohr 1994).

Having a standardized community framework will assist in the implementation of ecosystem-based management initiatives. The ELC will provide community descriptions and sampling methodologies for identifying and mapping valuable natural heritage features and areas. This will help municipalities to meet their obligations under the new system of planning in Ontario, as outlined in Policy 2.3 in the Provincial Policy Statement (PPS) (Province of Ontario 1997).

The ELC is an organizational framework, designed to be used at different scales. It is currently being incorporated into the Ministry of Natural Resources' Natural Resources Values and Information System (NRVIS Version 2), which should facilitate linking it to geographic information systems (GIS) and other local and regional databases. Furthermore, the ELC is the framework adopted by the Natural Heritage Information Centre (NHIC) for community ranking (Bakowsky 1998) and database management of community-related data. It will provide decision-making information at several geographical, ecological and administrative levels.

The ELC is designed to be flexible and expandable. This first approximation of the ELC represents a synthesis and organization of over 4,000 community descriptions (Bakowsky et al. in prep). However, as we learn more about the ecology of Southern Ontario through field sampling, reviews of this product and additional community descriptions from others, the ELC will be further refined.

Mapping and inventory will become important components of the ELC. To be useful, ecological units must be mappable. The ELC program must provide, at the minimum, the demonstration of operational mapping technologies at a variety of scales. The approaches to air-photo interpretation and mapping of ELC units have been developed in Northwestern Ontario (Arnup and Racey 1996). We are currently refining these approaches for application to Southern Ontario. Identification of Ecosites and Vegetation Types in the field is another important component of the ELC. The ELC must also include education and technology transfer to train all potential users in understanding the concepts of the ELC and to provide them with the skills to use it effectively.

The ELC will form the basis for ongoing research by providing objective stratification and sampling of ecological conditions. This will be especially important for major applications such as growth and yield studies, vegetation management studies, long-term ecological research, forest management, wildlife habitat analysis, life science inventories, park planning, private land stewardship, restoration and land-use planning.

This manual focuses on the practical application of ELC and should allow users to apply the first approximation of the ELC to a variety of needs while accommodating users to provide additional information for the refinement of the classification system.

Regional Context

This manual and the ELC for Southern Ontario apply to land and water units found within the 1995 Southern Ontario administrative region of the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources. This area is represented by Hills's Site Regions 6E and 7E (Burger 1993). The manual and ELC, therefore, apply to the area roughly enclosed by the Ontario—Quebec border, along the north shores of Lake Ontario and Lake Erie, up the east shoreline of Lake Huron to the tip of the Bruce Peninsula, around Georgian Bay to Midland, and eastward through Orillia, Marmora and over to Amprior (Figure 1). This area does not include Manitoulin Island.

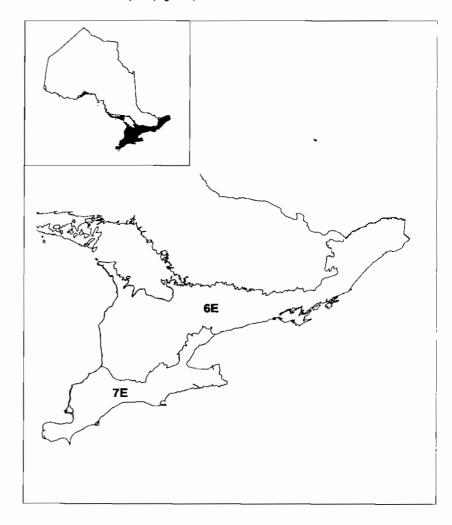


Figure 1. Maps showing the geographical area to which this manual and the Southern Ontario ELC are applicable. Site Region lines according to Jalava et al. 1997.

Development of the ELC in Southern Ontario

The development of the Southern Ontario ELC began by first drawing upon many of the existing community descriptions documented across Southern Ontario. Through examination of these existing data, we have begun approximating the overall hierarchy for the ELC and identifying the different natural communities found in Southern Ontario. While this first approximation of the ELC has been developed from existing information, the ELC field sampling program is concentrating on collecting the quantitative data needed for further, more detailed analyses. By comparing the results of the first approximations with the analysis of the field data, we can go through a series of iterations to progressively define and refine the units in the classification.

Step 1 - Collating Existing Information Sources

The first task was to locate, review and collate existing information on documented community types. This involved evaluating life science inventories, along with various other surveys and data sources. The community-type descriptions found within these sources were collated by systematically cataloguing the data. The primary data sources for this exercise are as follows.

Maycock, Paul, F. 1979. A Preliminary Survey of the Vegetation of Ontario as a Basis for the Establishment of a Comprehensive Nature Reserve System. Provincial Parks Branch, Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Toronto. 2 volumes.

In the late 1970s, the Parks and Recreation Branch set up a standard format for the inventory and evaluation of natural areas in Ontario. The criteria were developed principally by Dr. Paul Maycock, a faculty member with the Department of Botany at the University of Toronto. His surveys have been instrumental in developing the framework for a comprehensive nature reserve system in Ontario. Most of the ecological surveys have been done, at least in part, using his system.

Life Science Inventories of Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest (ANSI) and Ontario Provincial Parks

Many of the ANSI and Parks in Southern Ontario have life science inventories. A comprehensive listing of these inventories can be found in either Lee and Brand (1993) or Riley et al. (1998). Community-type descriptions for these inventories have been standardized to include lists of plant species, in order of decreasing dominance, along with corresponding soil texture, soil moisture and microclimate. The principal standards followed for these inventories are those developed by Dr. Paul Maycock, as outlined above.

International Biological Program (IBP) Inventories

In 1968, the International Biological Program set out to identify and describe important natural areas for preservation. For each area identified, a series of check sheets was completed. Included in these check sheets are descriptions of the community types identifying the different plant communities and species lists, as well as documentation of the associated site descriptions and soil properties. Similar standards were used in the IBP inventories as in the above ANSI reports.

Research Surveys

Many research oriented surveys have been conducted of the unique or uncommon community types found in Southern Ontario. Data from selected surveys were collated. These include: Dr. Doug Larson, Dr. Uta Mathes-Sears, Janet Cox, Steven Spring, John Riley, Jarmo Jalava, and Steve Varga — Niagara escarpment cliff and talus data; Wasyl Bakowsky, Don Faber-Langendoen, and Dr. P. Maycock — Tallgrass prairie and savannah data; Wasyl Bakowsky, Claudia Schaeffer, Jarmo Jalava, Anthony Goodban, Joyce Belcher and Dr. Paul Keddy — Alvar data; John Riley, Ian MacDonald, Harold Lee — wetland data; ELC forest data.

Although the community descriptions found within these sources represent diverse historical works, done by different people according to different standards, they still provide a large volume of useful data for developing an ELC. The various limitations of such a database are, therefore, overcome by the more general usefulness of such a large number of community descriptions.

The community descriptions found in the above sources have been screened, collated and entered into a database. The minimum data required for this collation was a listing of the plant species in order of decreasing dominance and notes on soil texture and soil moisture. Each community description has been referenced to the original data source.

To date, over 4,000 community-type descriptions have been collated and entered into this database. A listing of these community descriptions, used to generate the ELC, has been developed into a reference document, Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario: Catalogue of Documented Community Types (Bakowsky et al. in prep)

Step 2 - Analysis and Organization of Existing Information

With many of Southern Ontario's existing community types catalogued, the establishment of the current approximation proceeded. To aid in this process, existing ecological literature was reviewed to acquire additional general information about community definitions and to understand more fully the ecological factors responsible for the different community types.

Analysis of the catalogued data initially involved the sorting of the database according to species. This sorting of species data is known as tabular sorting, a method first developed by the European ecologist Braun-Blanquet (Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974). For example, this process brings together all the documented community types with Eastern White Cedar (*Thuja* occidentalis) as the primary dominant. Furthermore, the sorting involves the linking of community descriptions with similar dominants found on the same soil textures, soil moisture and microclimate.

Ultimately, in this first approximation, the individual community-type units were identified and defined based on recurring species patterns and their association with the other community components such as soil texture, soil moisture, topographic position and understorey species associates. To continue with the above example, all community descriptions where White Cedar was dominant were separated into at least 13 separate White Cedar units (at the Ecosite level in the classification). They were divided to distinguish upland dry, lowland moist, swamp, cliff rim, talus, rockland, forest and cultural types that have White Cedar as a dominant tree species. Therefore, the ecosite units are based as much on the patterns of varying environmental or historical conditions as they are on species composition.

Step 3 - Using New Quantitative Field Data

While existing information is being used to generate a first approximation of community-type units, new quantitative field data are being collected. The goal is to collect more detailed field data for the testing and refining of the first approximation of ELC components.

Forested communities have been selected as the first component to be quantitatively sampled in the field by the ELC program. A standard field sampling procedure has been developed for forests following those set by the provincial and other regional ELC programs. These procedures can be found in The Ecological Land Classification Field Manual for Forests (Chambers and Lee 1992). At present, there are 942 ELC forest sample plots spread out across Southern Ontario in Site Regions 6E and 7E.

The next priority for the acquisition of new data will be in wetlands, to develop quantitatively based ELC wetland units.

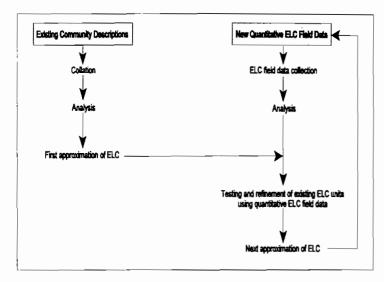


Figure 2. Schematic representation of the iterative approach used to develop the ELC in Southern Ontario.

Steps 4 and on - Further Refinement through Iterations

Currently, the first approximation of the ELC framework is based on existing data. It represents a stable classification framework that can be used now, for the description, classification, mapping, evaluation, planning and management of natural communities in Southern Ontario. The ELC will go through successive iterations as new data are collected, analyzed and used to test and refine the existing units in the classification (Figure 2).

The next target for developing the ELC will be the further refinement of those communities that are culturally derived. Much of Southern Ontario has a legacy of various land-use practices, whether intensive (i.e., clearing) or passive (i.e., grazing, management). Research will be carried out on the variety of communities arising from different land-use practices. Later incorporation of these culturally based communities into the ELC framework will meet the current need to describe, map, plan and manage this diverse set of landscape units.

While the development and refinement of the first approximation continues, based on existing data, there is ongoing field data collection by the ELC program in the forest communities across Southern Ontario. Multivariate analysis of the forest data will test and further refine the existing forest units within the ELC. By comparing the results of the first approximations with the analysis of the field data, we can progressively define and refine the forest units in the classification. This will ultimately lead to the generation of a Forest Ecosystem Classification for Southern Ontario (FEC), much like the FECs that have been produced for the other regions (Jones et al. 1983; Merchant et al. 1989; Sims et al. 1989; McCarthy et al. 1994; Chambers et al. 1997).

Refinement and development of the ELC will be an open process. To date, its development has benefited from the diversity and expertise of the many people that have been involved. Its further development could certainly benefit from the involvement of others. We, therefore, encourage any reviews and feedback you may have. Furthermore, we encourage those who know of, or subsequently find, community units that are currently not in the ELC to contact us and submit data for possible incorporation (see Appendix C).

Field Trials

The ELC and the application tools and techniques presented here have been developed and tested through an ELC Pilot Project, a private consulting contract and field trials.

The Field Sampling Methods and Data Cards, along with the integrated database to handle ELC-related information, were developed through a pilot project. The ELC program with Credit Valley Conservation, Jane Bowles, the Forest Resource Inventory Section (OMNR) and the Natural Heritage Information Centre were involved in this pilot. The objective of the pilot was to develop ELC-related field methodologies and databases to meet the planning and management needs of the Credit Valley Conservation's Natural Heritage Project.

The Description Framework and ELC Keys were subsequently developed and field tested by Jane Bowles and the ELC program. They were developed to standardize community descriptions across Southern Ontario. More important, this description framework increases the power of databases by making the description of communities uniform and consistent.



2. Orientation to the Classification

Organization of the ELC Framework

The ELC is made up of six nested levels. From the largest to the smallest scale, they are:

Site Region

System

Community Class
Community Series

Ecosite

Vegetation Type

These six nested levels of the ELC represent an organizational framework. The framework incorporates three levels (shaded above) that allow a community to be placed spatially within ecological zones in Ontario. That is, an Ecosite designation is only meaningful if you know which Site Region you are within. These three levels in the ELC framework put a community into a spatial context, following the hierarchy set by the CCELC (Table 1).

Furthermore, this framework also incorporates three other levels that allow us to understand better a community's ecological organization. That is, there are recurring community patterns across our landscape, based on recurring suites of ecological conditions. These units use the terms that have been well established in the fields of natural science and ecology. Terms such as fen, swamp or alvar summarize suites of ecological conditions that are not confined to any particular geographic location.

Therefore, the ELC in Southern Ontario blends the ability to put landscape units into a spatial context (i.e., "you are here...") with the ability to understand their community-related organization (e.g., "it is a bog").

Definitions of ELC Levels

Site Region

Site Region represents the highest level (coarsest resolution) of the ELC. It was developed by Hills (1952, 1958, 1960, 1976) and his co-workers (Pierpoint 1964; Burger 1972, 1976, 1993; Burger and Pierpoint 1990) to provide forest and land managers with a province-wide ecological framework (Burger 1993). Hills's Site Regions, as modified by Jalava et al. (1997), are being used for the Ecoregion level in the ELC hierarchy (see Figure 1).

In developing the 13 Site Regions of Ontario, Hills and his colleagues stressed the dependance of forest cover on climate, soil moisture, soil nutrients and disturbance. They defined site regions as "areas of land within which the response of vegetation to the features of landform follows a consistent pattern" (Hills 1966). Southern Ontario is composed of two of Hills's Site Regions: 6E and 7E (Figure 1).

Site Region 6E, the Lakes Simcoe – Rideau Site Region, occupies the northern portion of Southern Ontario in what Rowe (1972) called the Great Lakes – St. Lawrence Forest Region. This area is characterized by mixed forests of White Pine (*Pinus strobus*) and Red Pine (*Pinus resinosa*), Eastern Hemlock (*Tsuga canadensis*), Sugar Maple (*Acer saccharum*), Red Maple (*Acer rubrum*), Yellow Birch (*Betula alleghaniensis*), Red Oak (*Quercus rubra*), Basswood (*Tilia americana*) and White Elm (*Ulmus americana*). Other wide-ranging species include Eastern White Cedar (*Thuja occidentalis*), Largetooth Aspen (*Populus grandidentata*), Beech (*Fagus grandifolia*), White Oak (*Quercus alba*), Butternut (*Jugians cinerea*) and White Ash (*Fraxinus americana*) (Hills 1959; Rowe 1972).

In contrast, Site Region 7E, the Lakes Erie—Ontario Site Region, occupies the southern-most portion of Southern Ontario in what Rowe (1972) called the Deciduous Forest Region. This region is dominated by deciduous tree species, such as Sugar Maple, White Elm, Beech, Black Cherry (*Prunus serotina*), White Ash, Red Oak, White Oak, Red Ash (*Fraxinus pennsylvanica*) and Butternut (Hills 1959; Maycock 1963; Rowe 1972). Other, less common yet distinctive tree species include Tulip-Tree (*Liriodendron tulipifera*), Paw-Paw (*Asimina triloba*), Cucumber-Tree (*Magnolia acuminata*), Kentucky Coffee Tree (*Gymnocladus dioicus*), Black Gum (*Nyssa sylvatica*), Blue Ash (*Fraxinus quadrangulata*), Sassafras (*Sassafras albidum*), Black Walnut (*Juglans nigra*), Sycamore (*Plantanus occidentalis*), Swamp White Oak (*Quercus bicolor*), Big Shellbark Hickory (*Carya glabra*), Black Oak (*Quercus velutina*) and Pin Oak (*Quercus palustris*).

System

System is an organizational level in the ELC that helps reduce a complex natural landscape into a small number of community-based units. It serves as a more generalized organizational level that summarizes important ecological patterns and processes. Although System does not represent a level in the proposed spatial hierarchy for Ontario (Table 1), it does represent a useful organizational and conceptual level for the classification system.

System has been frequently used as an organizational level by those responsible for categorizing and classifying natural communities (e.g., Reschke 1990; Kavanagh 1990). Similarly, many other community-oriented classification systems have used comparable units for organizing communities. Various names, such as Community Types (e.g., Nelson 1987) or Formation Types (e.g., Jeglum et al. 1974), may have been used in the past as analogous organizational levels in other classification schemes.

The differences among larger scale Systems is mainly based on the relation between the substrate surface and the depth of the water table (Curtis 1959). Communities are differentiated by the response of the vegetation to differing ecological conditions along a water depth and soil moisture regime gradient. This classification follows the separation of communities into three Systems: Aquatic, Wetland and Terrestrial Systems.

The Aquatic System includes shallow or deep standing or flowing waters with little or no emergent vegetation. The depth of the water from the substrate surface, along with its influence on light penetration, represents the primary influence on such communities. Typically, aquatic communities are in water greater than 2 m deep. Within the Aquatic System, deep, open bodies of water are distinguished from those dominated by submerged and floating-leaved plant species.

The Wetland System includes those areas where water levels fluctuate and are under 2 m in depth. It is the predominance of emergent hydrophytic herbaceous and woody vegetation that best distinguishes wetlands from aquatic communities. Further separation of wetland communities is based on the extent and duration of flooding, combined with substrate type, disturbance (i.e., shoreline energy) and levels of available nutrients (Hutchinson 1975; Van der Valk 1981; Day et al. 1988; Keddy and Reznicek 1986; Zoltai and Vitt 1995).

The Terrestrial System includes all those upland areas where the water table is normally below the substrate surface. In many upland areas, unlike communities in the Aquatic and Wetland Systems, soil moisture is scarce at some point in the growing season. The distribution and abundance of plant species in upland areas are, therefore, affected by the availability of soil moisture, as well as by the nature of the parent material, physiography, soil depth and texture, drainage, disturbance and the levels of available nutrients (Curtis 1959; Grime 1979).

Community Class

The Community Class level, like System, is a useful organizational level for the classification, but is not part of the proposed spatial hierarchy for Ontario (Table 1). Community Classes are useful for organizing communities into groups, based on some similar, yet generalized,

ecological patterns and processes.

Many of the Community Class units will be familiar, having been part of the natural history and community ecology dialogue for many years. They range from units that have been very clearly defined (e.g., forest, marsh, cliff) to those that are broader or more vague (e.g., rock barren, savannah, sand barren). The objective here is not to re-invent any of these terms but to incorporate in the classification the most widely accepted definitions of these units to create a uniform and consistent classification format.

The criteria used to identify or discriminate among different community classes varies. Ultimately, the division of Community Classes is based on recurring patterns in plant species associations that have shared physiognomic characteristics, substrate type, geology and meso- and microclimate, as well as other ecological factors. For example, a cliff is readily identified by a near-vertical exposure of consolidated rock. In contrast, to identify a tallgrass prairie, savannah and woodland, the relative per cent cover of trees along with the identification of a specific tallgrass assemblage of herbaceous species is necessary. The criteria used to identify each Community Class is documented in the ELC Keys and Community Tables.

Community Series

Community Series also represent a useful organizational level for the classification yet are not part of the proposed spatial hierarchy for Ontario (Table 1). Community Series units break down Community Classes into units that are normally visible and consistently recognizable on air-photos or from a combination of maps, air-photo interpretation and other remote sensing techniques. Community Series are the lowest level in the ELC that can be identified without a site visit.

Community Series are distinguished based on the type of vegetation cover or the plant form that characterizes the community. For the most part, Community Series are identified based on whether the community has open, shrub or treed vegetation cover, as well as whether the plant form is deciduous, coniferous or mixed. These differences in vegetation cover typically reflect differences in disturbance levels, light levels and various other environmental gradients.

Ecosite

Ecosite is defined as "a part of an Ecosection having a relatively uniform parent material, soil and hydrology, and a chronosequence of vegetation", according to the Canada Committee on Ecological Land Classification (Table 1). That is, it is a mappable, landscape unit integrating a consistent set of environmental factors and vegetation characteristics. They represent the recurring plant species patterns selected for, and maintained, by varying ratios of different environmental factors.

In Northern and Central Ontario, the Forest Ecosystem Classifications (FEC) (Jones et al. 1983; Merchant et al. 1989; Sims et al. 1989; McCarthy et al. 1994; Chambers et al. 1997) and the Northwestern Region Wetland Classification (Harris et al. 1996) have been instrumental in refining the concept of Ecosites. This work has found that the principal elements used to define and identify Ecosites are:

Geology bedrock type Soils depth texture moisture regime nutrient regime drainage Vegetation structure species composition physiognomy

Vegetation Type

Vegetation Type is the finest level of resolution in the ELC. Vegetation Type represents a close analogue to the Ecoelement level in the CCELC hierarchy in Table 1.

Vegetation Types are recurring patterns found in the plant species assemblages associated with a particular Ecosite. Vegetation Types are generated by grouping plant communities that are most similar together, based entirely on the plant species composition. The goal is to distill the natural diversity and variability of plant communities to a small number of relatively uniform vegetation units. Naming the Vegetation Types normally includes the names of the species that dominate the plant community, according to relative cover.

Conventions and Terminology

When using the keys and community tables in this manual, use the following terminology and conventions or refer to other terms found in the Glossary.

Vegetation Terms and Conventions

The following terms and conventions apply to vegetation characteristics used in the ELC keys and in the Vegetation Characteristics column of the ELC Community Tables. They are used as criteria to help distinguish communities.

Cover: Is the area of ground covered or the relative proportion of coverage a particular plant species, vegetation layer or plant form represents. Cover can be expressed in relative or absolute terms.

Relative Cover: Cover as a proportion of the total canopy cover a particular species, vegetation layer or plant form represents; e.g., "coniferous species > 75% of canopy cover" means coniferous species make up greater than 75% of the canopy (coniferous forest) but do not necessarily cover at least 75% of the total ground area (refer to Table 2 and the example in Figure 4).

Absolute Cover: Proportion of the ground area, expressed as a per cent, covered by a particular plant species, vegetation layer or plant form; e.g. "shrub cover > 25%" means greater than 25% of the ground surface has shrub cover. Absolute cover is assessed by estimating the area on the ground covered by the shadow created by the vertical projection of the vegetation canopy (refer to Figure 3 and Table 2 and the example in Figure 4).

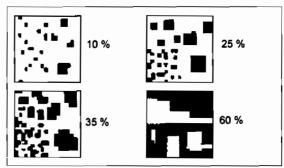


Figure 3. Representation of specific absolute cover values used to define and distinguish ELC communities. Refer to Appendix C for more cover charts.

Table 2. Cover value ranges used to define specific terms used in the ELC.

Terms	% Cover values
Absolute Covers:	
Open	tree cover ≤ 25 %; shrub cover ≤ 25 %
Shrub	tree cover ≤ 25 %; shrub cover > 25 %
Treed	tree cover > 25 % for all communities except Fens and Bogs; use tree cover > 10 % for Treed Fens and Treed Bogs
Savannah*	25% < tree cover ≤ 35%
Woodland	35% < tree cover ≤ 60%
Forest	tree cover > 60%
Relative Covers:	
Deciduous	deciduous species > 75% of canopy cover
Coniferous	coniferous species > 75% of canopy cover
Mixed	both deciduous and coniferous species > 25% of canopy cover

^{*} Note: Savannah is a term relating to a specific range of tree cover and not restricted to being a Tallgrass community modifier.

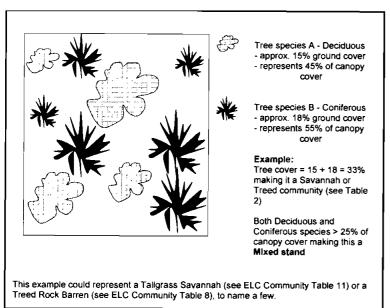


Figure 4. Diagrammatic representation of cover and how to assess it.

Dominant: A plant species or vegetation layer with the greatest cover or biomass within a community and represented throughout the community by large numbers of individuals. Visually more abundant than other species in the same layer; > 10% cover (absolute cover); > 35% canopy or vegetation cover (relative cover).

Co-dominant: Two or more plant species of similar stature that share more or less equally the greatest importance in a vegetation layer.

Associate(s): One or more plant species that commonly occur together, typically under similar ecological conditions.

Stand or Species Composition: Refers to the plant species making up a particular community; may be separated into different vegetation layers and listed with or without relative abundance values or symbols.

For example, "Sugar Maple, Beech, White Ash, Ironwood,"

represents a stand that has 40% Sugar Maple, 40% Beech, 15% White Ash and 5% Ironwood, as expressed in terms of relative cover.

Species composition may also be presented as a list of species separated by symbols only; > means greater than, >> means much greater than and = means approximately equal to.

Using the above example, "Sugar Maple = Beech >> White Ash > Ironwood"

means that Sugar Maple is approximately equal in abundance to Beech, which is in turn far greater than White Ash, which is in turn greater than Ironwood. These symbols are also used to indicate, in the ELC Community Tables, which species may be more or less common than others. For example, "Red Oak >> White Oak" in the Vegetation Characteristics column means practitioners should expect Red Oak to be far more commonly found than White Oak, in this particular community unit.

Naming of Ecosites and Vegetation Types: Many of the Ecosites and most of the Vegetation Types have one or more plant species listed. The order of species listed, more often than not, represents an order of decreasing dominance. However, expect variations in the vegetation associations observed in the field. That is, possibly not all the species listed may be found or the species may be found in a different order of dominance.

For example, if we observed a Beech₄₀White Ash₃₀Sugar Maple₁₈Red Oak₁₈ stand under moderately fresh moisture regime (1) conditions, it would be classified as a Dry -

Fresh Sugar Maple–Beech Deciduous Forest Type (see ELC Community Table 24). This represents acceptable variation for this forest unit.

Environmental Terms and Conventions

Substrate: The medium in which plants are rooted. Substrate includes organic, parent mineral material, mineral soil and bedrock. The term "substrate", rather than "soil", should be used, since soil specifically applies to only those unconsolidated mineral materials that have undergone soil formation processes to generate horizons (examples of soil horizons are Ah, B and C).

Substrate Types:

Organic Substrate: Substrates of the Organic order in the Canadian System of Soil Classification (Canadian Soil Survey Committee 1978) and the Ontario Institute of Pedology (OIP 1985). These substrates include those that have organic matter accumulations in excess of 40 cm or mineral soil that is heavily enriched with organic

material (Of, Om and Oh horizons, OIP 1985). In the field, organic-enriched mineral soils can be identified by their very dark to black colour, along with their greasy feel and dark staining of the hands.

Parent Mineral: Substrate formed from unconsolidated parent mineral material with little or no alteration as a result of soil processes (i.e., weathering, leaching, accumulation of organic matter, horizonation).

Mineral Soil: Substrate formed from unconsolidated mineral material that has undergone alteration as a result of soil processes (i.e., weathering, leaching, accumulation of organic matter), giving rise to soil horizons.

Rock: Unconsolidated rock substrates where all materials are greater than 2 mm in diamerter; average substrate depth is greater than 15 cm.

Bedrock: Exposed consolidated bedrock surfaces with variable accumulations of unconsolidated mineral substrates; average substrate depth of less than 15 cm.

Substrate Depth: Represents the average substrate depth for the entire coverage of the community.

Moisture Regime: Represents the seasonal available moisture supply for plant growth; classifications for moisture regimes come from the integration of several factors, including soil texture and drainage, and depth to mottles and gley. The translation from moisture regime defined by Maycock (1979) to the OIP standards is given in Table 3. The moisture regime categories in Table 3 are the more generalized moisture regimes defined by OIP (1985) and used in the classification of communities

Table 3. Moisture regime terms, based on OIP 1985 moisture regime standards and their Maycock (1979) moisture regime equivalents.

	soil moisture regime standard	S Codes	Maycock (1979) moisture regime equivalents (approximate)
Dry	dry, moderately dry	θ, 0	arid, very dry, dry
Fresh	moderately fresh, fresh, very fresh	1, 2, 3	dry-mesic, mesic
Moist	moderately moist, moist, very moist	4, 5, 6	wet-mesic, wet
Wet	moderately wet, wet, very wet	7, 8, 9	wet, very wet, saturated

Soil Texture: Refers to the soil texture classes defined by the Canadian System of Soil Classification (Canadian Soil Survey Committee 1978). Soil texture classes are based on the relative proportion of three particle sizes found within a soil sample; i.e., sand, silt and clay particles (Table 4).

Table 4. The ELC substrate texture classes and their associated component textures; based on OIP 1985 standards. Soil texture classes are the more generalized categories of soil texture used in the ELC and referred to in the ELC Community Tables.

Soil texture classes	OIP soil textures
Bedrock	consolidated bedrock surfaces
Rock	unconsolidated rock substrates; all materials > 2 mm in diameter; e.g., pure gravels, cobbles, stones
Sand	very coarse Sand, Loamy very coarse Sand, coarse Sand, Loamy coarse Sand, medium Sand, Loamy medium Sand, fine Sand, Loamy fine Sand
Coarse Loam	very fine Sand, Loamy very fine Sand, Silty very fine Sand, Silty very coarse Sand, Silty coarse Sand, Silty medium Sand, Silty fine Sand, Loam, very coarse Sandy Loam, coarse Sandy Loam, medium Sandy Loam, fine Sandy Loam
Fine Loam	Sandy Clay Loam, Clay Loam, Silty Clay Loam, Silt, Silt Loam
Clay	Sandy Clay, Silty Clay, Clay, heavy Clay
Organic	organic matter > 40 cm or mineral soil that is heavily enriched with organic material (Of, Om, Oh horizons, OIP 1985)

Note: Each of the above texture classes can have stones, cobbles or gravel associated with them, which should be noted as modifiers according to OIP (1985).

Rock Type: Refers to categories of rock or bedrock, based on their weatherability, chemical constituents and pH properties (Table 5) The properties of these rock types influence which plant species can grow and, therefore, the plant community composition at a particular site.

Table 5. The defining characteristics and examples of the three rock types used in the ELC.

Rock Type	Defining Characteristics	Examples
Carbonate	sedimentary rocks made up largely of carbonate minerals; rocks that fizz upon exposure to acid, rocks that release carbon dioxide upon heating, high pH; easily weathered	calcareous conglomerate greywacke, sandstone, shale, limestone, dolostone and marble
Basic	igneous rocks containing < 66% silica; circumneutral pH, intermediate weatherability	mafic to intermediate volcanic rocks, iron formation, diabase, gabbro and anorthosite
Acidic	igneous rocks containing > 66% silica; low pH, not easily weathered	granite, granodiorite, quartz diorite, quartz monzonite, syenite and gneissic rocks, quartz sandstone, quartzite and arkose

Note: Rock type can be determined usually by referring to other sources of resource information (e.g., Quaternary Geology series of reports and maps, Physiography of Southern Ontario (Chapman and Putnam (1984), or county soils reports)

Soil Drainage: Soil drainage classes represent how quickly water percolates through substrates by gravitational flow, draining away to be no longer available for plant growth. The soil drainage classes are defined by the OIP (1985) (Table 6) Soil drainage is primarily used in the ELC Community Tables to help distinguish different forest Ecosites.

Table 6. Drainage codes (OIP 1985).

OIP drainage classes	Dreinage terms	Í
1	very rapid	,
2	rapid	
3	well	
4	moderately well	ater re
5	ımperfect	×
6	poor	ncreasing water retention
7	very poor	↓ ≝

Slope Position: Refers to where on a topographic slope the community is found. Assign the slope position that the community occupies to the largest extent. If a community covers more than one slope position, either 1) assign a range of slope positions which best represents the community (e.g., upper to mid slope positions); or 2) check to make sure not more than one community is being assessed. Slope positions, for the most part, follow OIP (1985) standards (Table 7). Slope position is primarily used in the ELC Community Tables to help distinguish different forest Ecosites

Table 7 The slope position codes, their terms and what they mean (modified from OIP 1985).

	1903).	Constitution of the consti
Code	Term	Definition
1	Crest	the upper-most portion of a slope, shape usually convex in all directions with no distinct aspect
2	Upper Slope	the upper portion of the slope immediately below the crest; slope shape usually convex with a specific aspect
3	Middle Slope	the area of the slope between the upper slope and the lower slope, where the slope shape is usually straight with a specific aspect
4	Lower Slope	the lower portion of the slope immediately above the toe, slope shape usually concave with a specific aspect
5	Тое	the lower-most portion of the slope immediately below, and adjacent to, the lower slope; slope shape concave grading rapidly to level with no distinct aspect
6	Depression	any area that is concave in all directions, usually at the toe of a slope or within level topography
7	Level (Tableland)	any level area excluding toe slopes, generally horizontal with no distinct aspect
8	Complex	any area with complex microtopography; mounds and hollows vary in size and extent

Wetness Index: A numerical value assigned to plant species based on the tendency of that species to occur in wetland habitats (Oldham et al. 1995). The index is based on the definitions found in Table 8. A complete plant list with their associated Wetness Index scores can be found in Oldham et al. (1995) or in the ELC Database. A mean wetness score can be determined by taking the average of all the plant species wetness scores for a particular site.

Table 8. The wetland categories, their definitions and the Wetness Index; based on Oldham et al. (1995).

Wetland Category		Definition	Wetness Index	
OBL	Obligate Wetland	Occurs almost always in wetlands under natural conditions (estimated > 99% probability)	OBL	-5
		Usually occurs in wetlands, but	FACW +	-4
FACW	Facultative Wetland	occasionally found in non- wetlands	FACW	-3
		(estimated 67-99% probability)	FACW -	-2
	Facultativ e	Equally likely to occur in wetlands or non-wetlands (estimated 34-66% probability)	FAC +	-1
FAC			FAC	0
			FAC -	1
		Occasionally occurs in wetlands,	FACU+	2
FACU	Facultative Upland	but usually occurs in non- wetlands	FACU	3
:		(estimated 1-33% probability)	FACU -	4
UPL	Upland	Occurs almost never in wetlands under natural conditions (estimated < 1% probability)	UPL	5

3. ELC Keys

Using the ELC Keys

The ELC Keys use environmental and vegetation characteristics to identify communities. Refer to the previous section or the glossary for definitions of terms and conventions.

The keys are composed of a series of nested statements based on specific criteria, which lead to the differentiation and identification of communities. At each level of the key (numbers), two or three statements are presented (letters), representing distinct conditions. Decisions are made by selecting the statement that best represents the conditions of the community. Numbers on the right margin provide direction to (i.e., go to) the next set of appropriate statements. When a particular community's conditions are met, following the last statement will be the name of the community unit (in bold) along with the ELC Community Table number to refer to (in brackets and in bold).

Key to Systems

1a. Water table rarely or briefly above the substrate surface; substrate of parent mineral material, mineral soil or bedrock; depth of accumulated organics < 40 cm; standing pools of water or vernal pooling ≤ 20% of ground coverage; wetland plant species¹ cover ≤ 50% of total plant species cover; mean wetness of a site for native species > 0¹; moisture regime typically < 5 (OIP 1985)</p>

Terrestrial System

Key to Terrestrial Ecosites

1a.	varia and	able a	accur shall	olled site; typically a mosaic of exposed bedrock surfaces with nulations of unconsolidated mineral substrates; substrates patchy ow; average substrate depth ≤ 15 cm over bedrock; communities environmental limitations (i.e., rooting depth, drought)
1b.	Con	nmun	ities	on unconsolidated mineral substrates > 15 cm deep
	2a.	alte	ration	ities on parent mineral material; substrate with little or no as a result of soil formation processes; no obvious nent of soil horizons
	2b.			ities on mineral soil; substrates in which there is clear evidence mation or development of soil horizons to at least 15 cm
		3 a .	Tree	e cover > 25%
		3b.	Tree	e cover ≤ 25%
			4a. 4b.	Open communities originating from, or maintained by, anthropogenic or culturally based disturbances (e.g., planting or agriculture, clearing, recreation, soil movement, grazing or mowing); often having a large proportion of introduced species [Cultural] 6 Open communities not originating from, or maintained by, anthropogenic or culturally based disturbances; maintained by environmental limitations (e.g., drought, low nutrient availability) or disturbance (e.g., periodic fire) 5 5a. An assemblage of tallgrass prairie species — Little Bluestem (Schizachyrium scoparium), Big Bluestem (Andropogon gerardii), Indian Grass (Sorghastrum nutans) present; vegetation cover usually continuous or closed; maintained by periodic fire with seasonal drought
				5b. Tallgrass prairie species absent; soil sandy; vegetation cover usually low or patchy; trees and shrubs, when present, typically stunted; maintained by severe environmental limitations (e.g., drought, nutrient limitations) Open or Shrub Sand Barren Ecosites (10)
			6a.	Cover of shrub species > 25% Cultural Thicket Ecosites (30)
			6 b .	Cover of shrub species $\leq 25\%$ Cultural Meadow Ecosites (30)

^{&#}x27;Wetland plant species refers to those species with Wetness Index scores of -5 or -4, see Table 8; refer to Oldham et al. (1995) or the ELC Database for a list of species and their Wetness Index or for the calculation of mean wetness for a site.

7a.	sites and i	rece in the	nmunities where the trees have been planted, or on intly disturbed or actively managed by human activity process of regeneration by woody species; site has of non-treed land use; tree height > 2 m (e.g., regenerating old fields, plantations)
7b.	procesites but h	esse: that nave	mmunities of natural origin or undergoing natural s of seral or successional development (including have been cleared, disturbed or planted in the past since regenerated naturally); currently maintained by at are not anthropogenic
	8a.	Tre	e cover > 60%11
	8a.	Tre	e cover ≤ 60%
		9a.	An assemblage of tallgrass prairie species – e.g., Little Bluestem (<i>Schizachyrium</i> scopanium), Big Bluestem (<i>Andropogon</i> gerardii), Indian Grass (<i>Sorghastrum</i> nutans) present; ground-layer vegetation cover usually continuous or closed; tree cover is variable, usually scattered or patchy; trees show open-grown characteristics; community maintained by periodic fire with seasonal drought
		9b.	Tallgrass prairie species absent; soil sandy; ground-layer vegetation cover usually low or patchy; trees and shrubs typically stunted; maintained by severe environmental limitations (e.g., drought, nutrient limitations)
			10a. 25% < tree cover ≤ 35%
			10b. 35% < tree cover ≤ 60 % Tallgrass Woodland Ecosites (12)
	11a	dec	est community dominated by deciduous trees; iduous species > 75% of total tree canopy cover
	11b	con	est community dominated by coniferous trees; iferous species > 75% of total tree canopy cover Coniferous Forest Ecosites (13 - 15)
	110	spe	est community with a mixture of deciduous tree scies > 25% and coniferous tree species > 25% of all tree canopy cover
12	a. Tre		ver > 60%; dominating canopy trees are planted [Plantation] 14
12	b. Tre sca	e cov	ver ≤ 60%; trees planted or arising from natural regeneration; trees d or patches of open-grown trees

13a. 25% < tree cover ≤ 35%
13b. 35% < tree cover ≤ 60%
14a. Community dominated by deciduous trees; deciduous species > 75% of total tree canopy cover Deciduous Plantation Ecosites (29)
14b. Community dominated by coniferous trees; coniferous species > 75% of total tree canopy cover
14c. Community with a mixture of deciduous tree species > 25% and coniferous tree species > 25% of total tree canopy cover
15a. Communities on parent mineral material > 15 cm deep; tree cover > 60%
go baok to couplet?
15b. Communities originating from, or maintained by, anthropogenic or culturally based disturbances (e.g., planting or agriculture, clearing, recreation, substrate movement, grazing or mowing); often having a large proportion of introduced species; tree cover ≤ 60%
Cultural Ecosites (30)
15c. Communities not originating from, or maintained by, anthropogenic or culturally based disturbances; usually active sites with recent deposition or erosion, or sites with severe environmental limitations (i.e., extremes in moisture and temperature, nutrient limitations); tree cover ≤ 60%
16a. Communities restricted to active shorelines or near shore areas of lakes, ponds, rivers and streams
16b. Communities not restricted to active shorelines; substrate sand; vegetation cover usually low or patchy; trees and shrubs, when present, typically stunted; maintained by severe environmental limitations (e.g., drought, nutrient limitations) Sand Barren Ecosites (10)
17a. Active, often rolling, hills of accumulated sand; above the normal reach of waves and subject to erosion and deposition by wind (i.e., aeolian processes); restricted to Great Lakes shorelines in Site Regions 6E and 7E
17b. Near shore areas with steep to vertical exposures of unconsolidated mineral material > 2 m high; subjected to active disturbance from slumping, mass wasting and toe erosion
17c. Shoreline areas with high levels of disturbance; restricted to areas near water level and most subjected to active shoreline processes – periodic high water levels and storm events, wave action, erosion, deposition and ice scour Beach / Bar Ecosites (1)
• •

18 a .	Bed	rock-controlled topography; tree cover > 60% go back to couplet 7
18b.		munities found on enclosed or exposed steep or near-vertical bare ock surfaces and associated rock rubble; tree cover ≤ 60%
18c.	fissu	munities found on flat to rolling, knob and hollow or block reef and the bedrock-controlled topography; patchy soil accumulation; tree for \$< 60%
	19a	Community originating from, or maintained by, anthropogenic or culturally based disturbances (e.g., planting or agriculture, clearing, recreation, substrate movement or extraction, grazing or mowing); often having a large proportion of introduced species
	19b.	Community not originating from, or maintained by, anthropogenic or culturally based disturbances; maintained by severe environmental limitations imposed by very shallow soils over bedrock (e.g., bedrock type, limited rooting depth, extremes in moisture and temperature)
		More or less level expanses of limestone (carbonate) bedrock; patchy mosaic of exposed bedrock pavement and substrate accumulations in cracks or grykes; alternation of seasonal inundation and extreme drought
		20b. Block and fissure or rolling, knob and hollow bedrock; variable and extreme bedrock environments; patchy mosaic of bare rock surfaces and shallow substrate accumulations Rock Barren Ecosites (7 & 8)
	21a.	Steep or near-vertical exposures of bedrock >3 m high
	21b.	Community associated with boulder rubble at the base of cliffs
	21c.	Deep, very shaded cavities and crevices in bedrock
		Key to Wetland Ecosites
		ole seasonally drops below the substrate surface or water seasonally surface of a brown moss or <i>Sphagnum</i> peat
to 2	m; tre	ole rarely or periodically drops below the substrate surface; water depth up see cover ≤ 25%; emergent herbaceous and/or woody vegetation cover > nallow Water Wetlands]
2a.	Sub	strate of unconsolidated parent mineral material or bedrock4
2b.	mate (OIF	strate organic – build-up of decayed or partially decayed organic erial such as humus, muck or peat; organic substrates Of, Om, Oh 1985); depth of organic material > 40 cm; usually in sheltered areas little or no wave energy

	3a.		ib cover ≤ 25%; vegetation dominated by emergent aceous species
			Organic Shallow Marsh Ecosite (48)
	3b.	patc	b cover > 25%; vegetation dominated by continuous or hy shrub cover, with variable cover of emergent aceous species
			Organic Thicket Swamp Ecosites (41)
		4a.	Shrub cover < 25%; vegetation dominated by emergent herbaceous species
			Mineral or Bedrock Shallow Marsh Ecosites (47)
		4b.	Shrub cover > 25%; vegetation dominated by continuous or patchy shrub cover, with variable cover of emergent herbaceous species
5a.	as h	umus	e organic – build-up of decayed or partially decayed organic material such is, muck or peat; organic substrates Of, Om, Oh (OIP 1985); depth of naterial > 40 cm
5b.			of unconsolidated parent mineral material, mineral soil or
	6a.	Site	restricted to shoreline areas of the Great Lakes
	6b.	Site	not restricted to the Great Lakes shoreline
		7a.	Shoreline areas on sandy sites that are poorly drained, alternation of seasonal inundation and drought; vegetation typically continuous or closed; dominated by a unique association of hydrophytic prairie grasses: Indian Grass, Little Bluestem, Big Bluestem Tallgrass Meadow Marsh Ecosites (46)
		7b.	Shoreline areas on calcareous (carbonate), nutrient-poor parent mineral material or bedrock substrates; vegetation cover typically sparse or patchy; community dominated by a unique association of hydrophytic graminoids such as Twig Rush (<i>Cladium marisicoides</i>), Beak-rushes (<i>Rhynchospora</i> spp.), Nut Rushes (<i>Scleria</i> spp.) and shrubs such as Shrubby Cinquefoil (<i>Hypericum kalmianum</i>). Great Lakes Coastal Meadow Marsh Ecosites (46)
	8a.	Tree	e cover > 25% [Swamp]
	8b.	Tree	e cover ≤ 25%
		9a.	Shrub cover > 25%; vegetation dominated by continuous or patchy shrub cover, with variable cover of emergent herbaceous species
		9b.	Shrub cover ≤ 25%; vegetation dominated by emergent herbaceous species

1a.

1b.

	Substrate marl, tufa or other calcareous (carbonate) deposits associated with seepage areas; vegetation cover typically
	sparse or patchy Mineral Fen Meadow Marsh Ecosites (46)
	Substrate not composed of marl or other calcareous deposits; vegetation cover typically continuous or closed
	11a. Community dominated by deciduous trees; deciduous species ≥75% of total tree cover
	11b. Community dominated by coniferous trees; coniferous species ≥75% of total tree cover
	Community with a mixture of deciduous tree species 25% and coniferous tree species > 25% of total tree cover
2a. Tree	cover ≤25%
2b. Tree	cover >25% [Swamp]
	13a. Community dominated by deciduous trees; deciduous species > 75% of total tree canopy cover
	13b. Community dominated by coniferous trees; coniferous species > 75% of total tree canopy cover
	13c. Community with a mixture of deciduous tree species > 25% and coniferous tree species > 25% of total tree canopy cover
	Mixed Organic Swamp Ecosites (35 - 36)
1 4a .	Substrate of deep (> 40 cm) brown moss peat; water source minerotrophic; alkaline to mildly acidic conditions Fen Ecosites (42)
14b.	Substrate of deep (> 40 cm) <i>Sphagnum</i> spp. peat; prevailing conditions acidic, water source primarily ombrotrophic Bog Ecosites (43)
14c.	Substrate sedge peat, humus or muck
	Shrub cover > 25%; vegetation dominated by continuous or patchy shrub cover, with variable cover of emergent herbaceous species Organic Thicket Swamp Ecosites (41)
	15b. Shrub cover ≤ 25%; vegetation dominated by emergent herbaceous species

Key to Aquatic Ecosites

1a.	Dee by p	p wa dankt	ter (usually >2 m) of lakes, ponds or rivers; open water system dominated fon; \le 25% cover of vascular vegetation Open Aquatic Ecosites (49)
1b.	or s	ubme	permanent water (usually < 2 m) of lakes, ponds or rivers; floating-leaved ergent plant species cover > 25%; emergent vegetation cover ≤ 25% Water Community Series]
	2a.	float	mergent vegetation comprising > 75% of total vegetation cover; ting-leaved or emergent species ≤ 25% Submerged Shallow Aquatic Ecosites (50)
	2 b .	Floa sub	ating-leaved species comprising > 25% of the vegetation cover; mergent species cover ≤ 75%
		3a.	Floating-leaved vegetation > 75% of total vegetation cover; submergent or emergent species ≤ 25% Floating-leaved Shallow Aquatic Ecosites (50)
		3b.	Floating-leaved and submergent vegetation cover each > 25%; emergent species ≤ 25%



4. ELC Community Tables

37 ·

Using the ELC Community Tables

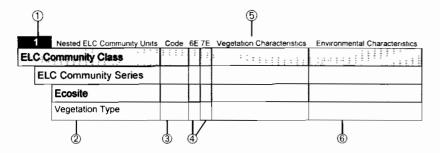


Figure 5. A representation of the ELC Community Tables, showing the format, the column headings and the name of the Nested ELC Community Units.

Figure 5 shows the presentation of the ELC Community Tables

- ① Represents the community table number. This number is used as a reference in various keys found in this manual.
- Represents four of the Nested ELC Community Units. The names and colours given to the levels in Figure 5 correspond to the ELC levels applicable in each of the community tables.
- 3 Refers to the Codes assigned to the community. These codes are aids for identification as well as for data storage and management.
- These two columns indicate, using an X, whether a particular Vegetation Type is found in Site Region 6E or 7E. Refer to Figure 1 for Site Region coverage.
- The Vegetation Characteristics column indicates different aspects of vegetation used to distinguish and identify different ELC Community Units. Refer to the Conventions and Terminology section or the Glossary for definitions. This column should be used to move through the tables until the vegetation characteristics are met that best match those of the unit being classified.

Order of Vegetation Characteristics: Within the Vegetation Characteristics column, a specific order is followed for the characteristics given:

- general Vegetation Characteristics and coverage that typify the Community Class:
- specific cover value criteria (e.g., tree cover > 60%) which further differentiates the Community Series; uses defined vegetation cover values and ranges, as shown in Table 2;
- plant species lists: specific species or species assemblages, may be used for identification; order typically follows: trees, shrubs, then herbaceous species listings and associates; refer to the Plant Species List in Appendix B for the Latin binomial name for species;
- may list other community-related generalities.

Note: Trees, shrubs and herbaceous species listed in this column, beside specific community units, are not necessarily indicator or diagnostic species for that community. These species should not be used exclusively to identify and classify communities. Instead, they represent a guide to which species you are likely to find in this community unit.

The Environmental Characteristics column is used to indicate different aspects of the environment which distinguish and identify different ELC Community Units. Refer to the Conventions and Terminology section or the Glossary for definitions. This column should be used to move through the tables until the environmental characteristics are met that best match those of the unit being classified.

Order of Environmental Characteristics: Within the Environmental Characteristics column, a specific order is followed for the characteristics given:

- diagnostic characteristics: those environmental criteria that are diagnostic to defining a particular community unit (e.g., for cliffs – vertical or near-vertical exposed bedrock greater than 3 m in height);
- specific criteria: significant ecological factors or processes important for the maintenance of a particular community; e.g., disturbance, soil moisture, soil drainage or soil depth;
- generalities: miscellaneous notes and environmental generalities that apply to a community.

Note: Where there are no Vegetation Types documented for a particular Ecosite, the community is known to occur, but insufficient data is available to list a Vegetation Type.

			Tei	res	stria	al (Comm	nun	ity ⁻	Гаь	le	s				
Environmental Characteristics	- subject to active shoreline processes: election and deposition and deposition and active shoreline and autostrate of coarse parent miner al material, rock or bedrock - abova seasonal high-water merk; subject to extremes in moisture and temperature.	- openness maintained by active shoreline processes	 unconsolidated mineral substrates; sand, loam, gravel, shingle or cobble 	- sand substrates	- gravel substrates		 acidic, basic or carbonate bedrock; avarage substrate depth < 15 cm, axposed bedrock surfaces cover > 50% 	- carbonate bedrock	- active processes less severe, woody species invasion is limited to shrubs	 unconsolidated mineral substrates; sand, loam, gravel, shingle or cobble 	- shingle substrates	- gravel substrates	 acidic, basic or carbonate bedrock, average substrete depth < 15 cm; exposed bedrock surfaces cover > 50% 	 active processes least severe, woody species invasion includes tree species 	 unconsolidated mineral substrates; sand, loam, gravel, shingle or cobble 	 acidic, basic or carbonate bedrock; avarage substrate depth < 15 cm; exposed bedrock surfaces cover > 50%
	• vegetation cover varies from patchy and barren to more closed and treed • tree cover s 60%	۰	 cover vanes from patchy and barren to continuous meadow 				- cover varies from patchy and barren to continuous meadow		-	 cover varies from patchy and barren to continuous thicket 			- cover varies from patchy and barren to continuous thicket	- 25% < tree cover ≤ 60%	 cover varies from savannah to woodland 	 cover varies from savannah to woodland
9E 7E				×		×		×				×				
9 9				×	× 2	×		×			×	×				
Code	88	880	BB01	BBO1-1 X	BBO1-2	BBO1-3 X X	8802	BB02-1 X	BBS	BBS1	BBS1-1	BBS1-2	BBS2	BBT	BBT1	BBT2
Nested FLC Community Units	Beach / Bar	Open Beach / Bar	Mineral Open Beach / Bar Ecosite	Sea Rocket Sand Open Beach Type	Wormwood Gravel Open Beach Type	Reed-canary Grass Mineral Open Beach Type	Bedrock Open Beach / Bar Ecosite	Shrubby Cinquefoil Carbonate Open Bedrock Beach Type	Shrub Beach / Bar	Mineral Shrub Beach / Bar Ecosite	Red Cedar - Common Juniper Shingle Shrub Beach Type	Willow Gravel Shrub Beach Type	Bedrock Shrub Beach / Bar Ecosite	Treed Beach / Bar	Mineral Treed Beach / Bar Ecosite	Bedrock Treed Beach / Bar Ecosite

			- 1	
Sand Dune	as		- vegetation cover varies from patchy and barren to more closed and treed - tree cover < 60%	- active rolling sand hills formed by shoreline and aeolian processes; restricted to the near-shore areas of the Great takes in EE and 7E - stability of suberrate variable; little to no accumulation of organic malerials; low nutrient availability excumulation of organic malerials; low nutrient availability and temperature axtenes
Open Sand Dune	SDO		- tree cover < 25%; shrub cover < 25%	_
Open Sand Dune Ecosite	SD01		- cover varies from patchy and barren to continuous meadow - usually dominated by graminoids	- restricted to most active, least stable send
Little Bluestem Switchgrass Beachgrass Open Dune Type SDO1-1	-	×		
Little Bluestem – Long-leaved Reed Grass – Great Lakes Wheatgrass Open Dune Type	SD01-2	×		
Shrub Sand Dune	SDS		- tree cover s 25%, shrub cover > 25%	
Shrub Sand Dune Ecosite	SDS1		- cover varies from patchy and barren - more stable, less disturbed sand to continuous thicker to continuous thicker to continuous thicker to consist the scale of the scale o	- more stable, less disturbed sand
Sand Cherry Shrub Dune Type	SDS1-1	×		
Hop-tree Shrub Dune Type	SDS1-2	×		
Juniper Shrub Dune Type	SDS1-3	×	 	
Treed Sand Dune	SDT		- 25% < trêe cover ≤ 60%	
Treed Sand Dune Ecosite	SDT1		cover varies from savannah to woodland usually vanably treed with understorey dominated by graminoids	· relatively stable sand
Cottonwood Treed Dune Type	SDT1-1	×		
Baisam Poplar Treed Dune Type	SDT1-2	×		
Red Cedar Treed Dune Type	SDT1-3	×		

6	Nested ELC Community Units	Code	9	7E ,	Ī	Environmental Characteristics
Bluff		뮵			- vegetation cover varies from patchy varies and barren to continuous herbaceous or almo cover \$\times\$ 10% - tree cover \$\times\$ 10% - tree invasion restricted by erosion-related disturbances	active, alseep to near-vertical exposures of unconsolidated mineral material material material to 2 m in height exposures or 2 m in height exposures or riverine assirched to active excelonal processes abovelines a subject to extremes in moisture and temperature
	Open Bluff	BLO			- free cover s 25%, shrub cover s 25% - Field Horsetail, Coltstoot, Canada Goldenrod, Nerrow-leaf Goldenrod and Sweet White Clover	- substrate recently disturbed, subject to ongoing erosional processes least stable substrates
	Mineral Open Bluff Ecosite	BL01			 cover varies from patchy and barren to acutinuous meadow continuous meadow 	 substrate of sand, coarse loam, fine loam or clay
	Open Clay Bluff Type	BL01-1	×	×	1 1	- clay substrates
<u> </u>	Shrub Bluff	BLS			- tree cover < 25%, shrub cover > 25% - Staghorn Surnac common - Field Horsetail, Coltsfoot, Canada Goldenrod, Narrow-leaf Goldenrod and Sweet White Clover	- longer time since disturbance or enstionel processes less severe - more steble substretes
	Mineral Shrub Bluff Ecosite	BLS1	×	×	X - cover varies from patchy and barren to - substrate of sand, coarse loam, fine continuous thicket	- substrate of sand, coarse loam, fine loam or day
•	Treed Bluff	BLT			- 25% < tree cover s 60%	 Ionger time since disturbance or erosional processes less severe more steble substrates with tree reganeration
	Mineral Treed Bluff Ecosite	BLT1	×	×	X - Trembling Aspen, Largetooth Aspen and Stagnom Sumac	 substrate of sand, coarse loam, fine loam or day

reside and office		ŀ		
Oliff	<u>ط</u>	. // -//	-vegelation cover varies from patchy and barren to more closed and treed - tree cover x 60%	- vertical or near-vertical exposed beforck. - s an height, bedrock type important - sharp to verlably broken edges, faoos and rims; average autorized depth < 15 cm - highly exposed; subject to extremes in temperature and moisture
Open Cliff	G _C O		 tree cover ≤ 25%; shrub cover ≤ 25% 	 typically found on the vertical or near- vertical bare bedrock faces
Carbonate Open Cliff Ecosite	CLO	F	- cover patchy and barren	- carbonate bedrock
Cliffbrake - Lichen Carbonate Open Cliff Type	CL01-1 X X	×		
Buiblet Fern - Herb Robert Carbonate Open Cliff Type	CL01-2 X X	×		
Canada Bluegrass Carbonate Open Cliff Type	CL01-3 X X	×		17.
Moist Open Carbonate Cliff Seepage Type	CL01-4 X X	×		excess moisture due to seepage
Open Carbonate Cliff Rim Type	CL01-5	×		
Acidic Open Cliff Ecosite	CL02		- cover patchy and barren	- acidic bedrock
Shrub Cliff	. STO		- tree cover s 25%, shrub cover > 25%	 dependent on how broken and fractured the cliff rim and face are
Carbonate Shrub Ciff Ecosite	CLS1		- cover varies from patchy and barren to confinuous thicket	- carbonate bedrock
Common Juniper Carbonate Cliff Type	CLS1-1	×		
Round-leaved Dogwood Carbonate Cliff Type	CLS1-2	×		
Acidic Shrub Cliff Ecosite	CLS2		 cover varies from patchy and barren to continuous thicket 	- acidic bedrock
Treed Cliff	CLT		- 25% < tree cover s 60%	 typically restnated to the narrow cliff rim dependent on how broken and fractured the cliff rim and face are
Carbonate Treed Cliff Ecosite	CLT1		- cover varies from patchy and barren to more closed in nature (i.e., savannah or woodland)	- carbonate bedrock
White Cedar Treed Carbonate Cliff Type	CLT1-1	×		
Sugar Maple - Ironwood - White Ash Treed Carbonate Cliff Type	CLT1-2	×		
White Birch - Aspen Treed Carbonate Cliff Type	CLT1-3	×		
Acidic Treed Cliff Ecosite	בנוט		 cover varies from patchy and barren to more closed in neture (i.e., savannah or woodland) 	- acidic bedrock

Nested FLC Community Units	Code	6E 7E		Environmental Characteristics
A 2 A 2 A 3 A 4 A 4 A 4 A 4 A 4 A 4 A 4 A 4 A 4	¥	* 1 1 1	- vegetation cover verse from percey and barren to more closed and treed - tree cover's 60%	
Open Talus	TAO		- tree cover s 25%, shrub cover s 25%	
TI I GIOS Talus Exerts	TAO1	-	- cover patchy and barren	- carbonate rock
Ory – Fresh Carbonate Open Talus Type	TA01-1	×	A Bluegrass and Maidenhair Spleenwort	
Fresh – Moist Carbonate Open Talus Type	TA01-2	×	X and White Snakeroot	Innot - moist (4,5) to fresh (2,3) moisture regimes
Acidic Open Talus Ecosite	TA02	-	- cover patchy and barren	- acidic rock
Shrub Talus	TAS		- tree cover ≤ 25%; shrub cover	- tree cover < 25%; shrub cover > 25%, intermediate proportions of bare fock surfaces and substrate availability
Carbonate Shrub Talus Ecosite	TAS1		- cover varies from patchy and barren to continuous thicket	arren - carbonate rock
Round-leaved Dogwood Carbonate Shrub Talus Type	TAS1-1	×	×	
Mountain Maple Carbonate Shrub Talus Type	TAS1-2	×	×	
Acidic Shrub Talus Ecosite	TAS2		- cover varies from patchy and barren - acidic rock to continuous thicket	arren - acidic rock
Treed Talus	TAT		- 25% < tree cover s 60% - cover varies from patchy and barren to more closed in nature (i.e., sevannah or woodlend)	- greater availability of substrate accumulated arran between rocks
Carbonate Treed Talus Ecosite	TAT1			- carbonale rock
Dr. Fresh Chinquann Oak Carbonate Treed Talus Type 1AT1-1	TAT1-1		×	- dry (0,0) to fresh (1,2,3) moisture regimes
Dry Eresh White Cedar Carbonate Treed Talus Type	TAT1-2	×	×	- dry (0.0) to fresh (1.2.3) moisture regimes
Dr. – Fresh White Birch Carbonate Treed Talus Type	TAT1-3	×	×	- dry (0,0) to fresh (1,2,3) moisture regimes
Fresh - Moist Sugar Maple Carbonate Treed Talus Type	TAT1-4	×	×	- moist (4.5) to fresh (2.3) moisture regimes
Fresh - Moist Basswood - White Ash Carbonate Treed Talus Type	TAT1-5	×	×	- moist (4.5) to fresh (2.3) moisture regimes
Fresh Moist Hemlock Sugar Maple Carbonate Treed Talus Type TAT1-6	e TAT1-6	×	×	- moist (4.5) to fresh (2.3) moisture regimes
A List Took Toline Doosto	TAT2			· acidic rock

Nested ELC Community Units	Code	إر	4	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Alvar	- A			- vegetation cover varies from patchy and barren to more closed and treed - tree cover \$ 60%	- level, unfractured limestone (carbonate) abdrock - patichy mosaic of bara rock pervement and shallow substitute over bedrock; substrate dapth < 15cm audistrate dapth < 15cm - seasonial atternation between inundation
Open Alvar	ALO			- tree cover < 25%; shrub cover < 25%	- typically restricted to bare rock pavement and patchy shellow substrates
Open Alvar Ecosite	ALO1			- cover varies from patchy and barren to	
Dry Lichen – Moss Open Alvar Pavement Type	AL01-1	×	×	- vegetation patchy and barren	- dry (8, 0) moisture regime
Dry Annual Open Alvar Pavement Type	AL01-2	×	×	X - vegetation patchy and barren	- dry (θ, 0) moisture regime
Dry - Fresh Little Bluestem Open Alvar Meadow Type	AL01-3	×		- vegetation more continuous meadow	- dry (0) to fresh (1,2,3) moisture regime
Dry - Fresh Poverty Grass Open Alvar Meadow Type	AL01-4	×		- vegetation more continuous meadow	- dry (0) to fresh (1,2,3) moisture regime
Fresh - Moist Tufted Hairgrass Open Alvar Meadow Type	AL01-5	×	Γ	- vegetation more continuous meadow	- moist (4,5) to fresh (1,2,3) moisture regime
Shrub Alvar	ALS			- tree cover s 25%; shrub cover > 25%	on very shallow substrates or in fractures (grykes)
Shrub Alvar Ecosite	ALS1	×		- cover varies from patchy and barren to continuous thicket	
Common Juniper Shrub Alvar Type	ALS1-1	×			
Creeping Juniper-Shrubby Cinquefoil Dwarf Shrub Alvar Type ALS1-2	ALS1-2	×		- vegetation stunted	
Scrub Conifer – Dwarf Lake Ins Shrub Alvar Type	ALS1-3	×		- White Spruce, White Cedar or Common Juniper	
Treed Alvar	ALT			- 25% < tree cover < 60%	- on very shallow substrates or in frectures (grykes)
Treed Alvar Ecosite	ALT1			- cover varies from patchy and barren to - bedrock more fractured or greater more closed in nature (i.e., savannah or aubstrate accumulation woodland)	- bedrock more fractured or greater substrate accumulation
Chinquapin Oak - Nodding Onion Treed Alvar Type	ALT1-1		×		- Pelee Island type
Shagbark Hickory - Prickly Ash Treed Alvar Type	ALT1-2		×	- Shrubby Cinquefoil	- Flamborough Plains type
White Cedar - Jack Pine Treed Alvar Type	ALT1-3	×			
Jack Pine - White Cedar White Spruce Treed Alvar Type	ALT1-4	×			
Red Cedar - Early Buttercup Treed Alvar Type	ALT1-5	×			

Mested ELC Committed Cities	יור יור	}	-	Cityliolilletial Cranaciciistics
Rock Barren	88		- vegeration cover varies from patchy and barrien to more doised and treed tree cover s 60%	- variable bedrock; rolling rock knob and hollow, rock reigt to blood; and frasure - rock type important; patchy soil development; autostrate depth < 15 cm and variable
Onen Rock Barren	RBO	+	- tree cover < 25%; shrub cover < 25%	 extremes in moisture and temperatures found where conditions are most extreme; bare rock surfaces or small patches of very
	7000	\dagger	cover adoption service	shallow substrates
Carbonate Open Rock Barren Ecosite	5	1	Cover percent and control	- Car cor late councy
Dry Carbonate Open Rock Barren Type	RB01-1	× _	- Harebell, Early Saxifrage, Bristle-leaved Sedge, Poverly Grass and Ebony Spieenwort	
Basic Open Rock Barren Ecosite	RB02		- cover patchy and barren	- basic bedrock
Dry Basic Open Rock Barren Type	RB02-1	×	- Poverty Grass, Cow-wheat, Hairgrass, Harebell, Prante Cinquefoll, Fragile Fern and Spikemoss	
Acidic Open Rock Barren Ecosite	RBO3	-	- cover petchy and barren	- acidic bedrock
Dry Acidic Open Rock Barren Type	RB03-1	×	- Poverly Grass, Cow-wheat, Rusty Woodsia, Pale Corydalis, Fringed Buckwheat, Hedwig's Moss and Bristly Sarsaparilla	
Shrub Rock Barren	RBS	_	- tree cover < 25%; shrub cover > 25% - see Open Rock Barren for understorey species	- found where conditions may be less extreme; where rock is broken and crecked or where limited substrates have accumulated
Carbonate Shrub Rock Barren Ecosite	RBS1		- cover patchy and barren to continuous thicket	- carbonate bedrock
Common Juniper Carbonate Shrub Rock Barren Type	RBS1-1	×		
Round-leaved Dogwood Carbonate Shrub Rock Barren Type	RBS1-2	×		
Basic Shrub Rock Barren Ecosite	RBS2		- cover petchy and barren to continuous thicket	- basic bedrock
Chokecherry Basic Shrub Rock Barren Type	RBS2-1	×		
Common Juniper Basic Shrub Rock Barren Type	RBS2-2	×		
Acidic Shrub Rock Barren Ecosite	RBS3		- cover petchy and barren to continuous thicket	- acidic bedrock
Blueberry Acidic Shrub Rock Barren Type	RBS3-1	×		
Common Juniper Acidic Shrub Rock Barren Type	RBS3-2 X	×		

8 Nested ELC Community Units	Code	. 9e	7E	Code 6E 7E Vegetation Charactenstics	Environmental Characteristics	
Rock Barren	82	* : :	787	- vegetation cover varies from patchy and barran to more closed and treed rock rest to block and fissure - trock type important; patchy is - rock type important; patchy is - trock type important; patchy is - trock type important; patchy is - trock type important to many adversarial of the many adversarial to the patch to the pa	- vegetation cover veries from petchy - variable bedrock; rolling rock knob and hollow, and barren to more closed and treed rock real to block and frasure - rock real reportant; patchy sail development; rock type important; patchy sail development; authorities depth < 45 cm or variable authorities from the sail development;	
Treed Rock Barren	RRT		17.7	- 25% < tree cover < 60%	- found where befook is broken and cracked or	

8 Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E 7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
ock Barren	88		- vegetation cover varies from patchy - variable bedrock; rolling roc and barren to more closed and treed rock reet to block and frasure - rock type important; patchy - the cover s 60% aubtracted degit < 15 cm and aubtracted degit < 15 cm and aubtracted degit in points and in	- vegetation cover varies from patchy - variable bedrock, rolling rock knob and hollow, and betran to more closed and treed rock reef to block and fissure - tree cover s 60% - tree cover s 60% - substitute degth < 16 cm and variable - anthemas in moist raise.
Treed Rock Barren	RBT		- 25% < tree cover s 60% - see Open Rock Barren for the possible understorey species	- found where bedrock is broken and cracked or where shallow substrates have accumulated
Carbonate Treed Rock Barren Ecosite	RBT1		- cover varies from patchy and barren - carbonate bedrock to more closed in nature (i.e., savannah or woodland)	- carbonate bedrock
Red Cedar Carbonate Treed Rock Barren Type	RBT1-1	×		
Hackberry Carbonate Treed Rock Barren Type	RBT1-2	×		
Oak Carbonate Treed Rock Barren Type	RBT1-3	×		
Basic Treed Rock Barren Ecosite	RBT2		- cover varies from patchy and barren - basic bedrock to more closed in nature (i.e., savannah or woodland)	- basic bedrock
Oak - Red Maple - Pine Basic Treed Rock Barren Type RBT2-1	RBT2-1	×		
Red Cedar Basic Treed Rock Barren Type	RBT2-2 X	×		
Jack Pine Basic Treed Rock Barren Type	RBT2-3	×		
Acidic Treed Rock Barren Ecosite	RBT3		- cover varies frompatchy and barren - acidic bedrock to more closed in nature (i.e., savannah or woodland)	- acidic bedrock
Pitch Pine Acidic Treed Rock Barren Type	RBT3-1	×		
Jack Pine Acidic Treed Rock Barren Type	RBT3-2 X	×		

o	Nested FLC Community Units	Code 6E 7E	6E 7	Ä,	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
6	Crevice and Cave	.8			- vegetation cover patchy and barren; influenced by extreme shading - trees and shrubs absent	 sheltered, mostly enclosed cevities and crevices in bedrock extreme shading; cool temperatures rock type important
ပ်	Crevice	CCR		† ·	- vegetation varies with light availability	sheltered, mostly enclosed crevices in bedrock extreme shading, cool temperatures
	Carbonate Crevice Ecosite	CCR1		\vdash		- carbonate bedrock
	Moist Liverwort - Moss - Fern Carbonate Crevice Type CCR1-1 X X	CCR1-1	×	×		
	Acidic Crevice Ecosite	CCR2				- acidic bedrock
ပိ	Cave	SC A		-	- vegetation varies with light availability	- sheltered, mostly enclosed cavities in bedrock - extreme shading; cool temperatures
	Carbonate Cave Ecosite	CCA1		\vdash		- carbonate bedrock
	Acidic Cave Ecosite	CCA2		\vdash		- acidic bedrock

Sand Barren Open Sand Barren Open Sand Barren	Code SBO SBO	6E 7E	Vegetation Characteristics - vegetation cover varies from patchy and barriers to more closed and treed - tree cover s 25%, shrub cover s 25% - cover varies from patchy and barren to continuous meadow	Environmental Characteristics distinct topographic features (i.e.; sand dure) - siziped to periods of prototyped drought and disturbances (e.g., fire) - extremely droughty and disturbed sands
Dry Bracken Fern Sand Barren Type	SB01-1	×		
Dry Hay Sedoe Sand Barren Tybe	SB01-2	: ×		
Dry Ray Sedge Sand barren Type	SBO1-2	< ×		
Shrub Sand Barren	SBS	<	- tree cover < 25%; shrub cover > 25%	
Shrub Sand Barren Ecosite	SBS1	1	- cover varies from patchy and barren to	0
Treed Sand Barren	SBT		- 25% < tree cover < 60%	
ומנים כשות סשונים	<u> </u>	_		

11	Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E 7E	E	Code 6E 7E Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics	
				ç	pround layer dominated by prairie	- on unconsolidated mineral	
:				5	aminoids; Big Bluestem, Little Bluestem substrates; soil depth > 15 cm; well-	substrates; soil depth > 15 cm; well-	
מבכ	Tallorace Drairie Savannah			S	nd Indian Grass	drained sands, loams and sometimes	
י הואלים	Solitario, Cavallian	9	_	*	- variable cover of open-grown trees	clay	
141 7		<u>-</u>	_	-	tree cover s 60%	 subject to seasonal extremes in 	
and w			-			moisture conditions; apring flooding	
	3					and summer denically fractions	

					disturbance by fire
Open Tallgrass Prairie	TPO			- tree cover < 25%; shrub cover < 25%	
Dry Tallgrass Prairie Ecosite	TPO1			 dominated by prairie graminoids 	 prolonged periods of drought
Dry Tallgrass Prairie Type	TP01-1 X		×	- associates include Cylindric Anemone, - dry (0) X Rock Sandwort, Pinweed, Scribner's Panic regimes Grass and Bluets	- dry (0) to fresh (1.2) moisture regimes
Fresh – Moist Tallgrass Prairie Ecosite	TP02			- dominated by prairie graminoids and forbs	 seasonal flooding followed by summer drought
Fresh – Moist Tallgrass Praine Type	TP02-1		×	- associates include Dense Blazing-star fresh (3	- fresh (2.3) to moist (4.5) moisture regimes
Tallgrass Savannah	TPS			- 25% < tree cover s 35% - see Open Tailgrass Praine vegetation types for understorey vegetation	
Dry Tallgrass Savannah Ecosite	TPS1			- widely spaced, open-grown trees with an - prolonged periods of drought understorey of prairie graminoids and forces.	 prolonged periods of drought
Dry Black Oak Tallgrass Savannah Type	TPS1-1	_	×		- dry (0) to fresh (1,2) moisture regimes
Dry Black Oak – Pine Tallgrass Savannah Type	TPS1-2	×	×		- dry (0) to fresh (1,2) moisture regimes
Fresh – Moist Tallgrass Savannah Ecosite	TPS2			- widely spaced, open-grown trees with an - seasonal flooding followed by understorey of prairie graminoids and summer drought forbs	 seasonal flooding followed by summer drought
Fresh - Moist Pin Oak - Bur Oak Tallgrass Savannah Type TPS2-1	TPS2-1		×		- fresh (2.3) to moist (4.5) moisture regimes

12 Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E 7E	Code 6E 7E Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Tallgrass Prairie, Savannah and Woodland	4		- ground layer dominated by prairie graminoids. 18g Bluestem, Little Bluesten and Indian Grass - variable cover of open-grown tress - tree cover s 60%	- on unconsolidated mineral substitutes; soil depth > 30 cm; well drained sends; loams and sometimes clay - subject to seasonal autrenee in moisture conditions; spring flooding and aurrimer drought; frequent
Tallgrass Woodland	TPW		- 35% < tree cover s 60% - see Open Taligrass Prairie vegetation types for understorey vegetation	usunance by life
Dry Taligrass Woodland Ecosite	TPW1		- open-grown trees with an understorey - prolonged periods of drought of prairie graminoids and forbs - Pennsylvania Sedge common	- prolonged periods of drought
Dry Black Oak – White OakTaligrass Woodland Type	TPW1-1	×_		-dry (0) to fresh (1.2) moisture regimes
Dry Bur Oak - Shagbark Hickory Tallgrass Woodland Type	TPW1-2 X	×		- dry (0) to fresh (1 2) moisture regimes - shallow soils over carbonate bedrock
Fresh - Moist Tallgrass Woodland Ecosite	TPW2		- open-grown trees with an understorey - seasonal flooding followed by of prairie graminoids and forbs	- seasonal flooding followed by summer drought
Fresh – Moist Black Oak – White Oak Taligrass Woodland Type	TPW2-1	×		- fresh (2.3) to maist (4.5) maisture regimes
Fresh – Moist Pin Oak Taligrass Woodland Type	TPW2-2	×		- fresh (2.3) to moist (4.5) moisture regimes

	- site conditions and substrate types variable	<u>۲</u>	- dry (8,0) to freath (1,2) soil moisture lea mixtures regimes. Ite Britch, coccurs on droughty shellow soils learn, over bedrock, rock, sends and coarse loans with rapid (2) to moderately well coarse riceberry limit the growth or durer species leatewed upper to middle slope (1,2,3) and Heiry	ecies and mosture regimes mosture regimes - typically on shallow soils over either addic, basic or carbonate bedrock, most extreme sites	ately sands, coarse loams and shallow soils over acidic basic or carbonate bedrock, or rock, less extreme siles
	- tree cover > 60%	- conifer tree species > 75% of canopy cover	- Jack Pine, White Pine or Red Pine aspearatelly dominant or in variable mixtures aspearatelly dominant or in variable mixtures - Cask apecies, White Cedar, White Birch, and to a lesser extent Hemlock, Balsam Fir and Red Maple associates and Red Maple associates. Common Juniper, Wintergreen, Buffelo Berry, Serviceberry, app. and Sweet Fern - Bracken Fern, Gaywings, Bristle-leeved Seage, Large-leaved Astar and Heiry Goldenrod	- Jack Prine dominant - White Prine, Red Prine, Oak species and Red Maple more common associales	FOC1-2 X X dominant or in variable mixtures
6E 7E		-		×	×
Code 6		55	F0C1	FOC1-1 ×	F0C1-2
Nested FLC Community Units	orest	Coniferous Forest	Dry – Fresh Pine Coniferous Forest Ecosite	Dry Jack Pine Coniferous Forest Type	Dry – Fresh White Pine – Red Pine Coniferous Forest Tune

Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E 7E	7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Forest	6			- tree cover > 60%	- site conditions and substrate types variable
Coniferous Forest	50			- confer tree species > 75% of canopy cover	
Dry – Fresh Cedar Coniferous Forest Ecosite	FOC2			- Red Cedar or White Cedar separately regimes - Independent and continued of continued continued to the continued of the con	- dry (8,0) to fresh (1,2) soil moisture regimes - on shallow soils over bedrock, rock, sands and loems with rapid (2) drainage, more common on carbonate substrates and bedrock - upper to middle slope (1,2,3) and tablaland (7) topographic positions
Dry – Fresh Red Cedar Coniferous Forest Type	F0C2-1 ×	×	×	- Red Cedar dominant - Red Cedar dominant - Red Oak, White Oak, Chinquapin Oak, Dwarf Chinquapin Oak, Black Oak, White Pric, Red Price, Black Walnut, Ironwood Hackberry and Hickory associates - Canada Blue Grass Swilch Grass, Poverty Oal Grass, St. John's-wort, Hawkweeds, Goldenrods and Asters - typically invading cleared areas, such as abandoned fields and pastures, or on exiteme sites with shallow or no soil over bedrock (see Treed Rock Barren)	
Dry – Fresh White Cedar Coniferous Forest Type	F0C2-2	×	×	FOC2-2 X Y dominance with White Spruce or Balsam Fir	f

15 Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E/E	9E/E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Forest	6		- tree cover > 60%	- site conditions and substrate types variable
Coniferous Forest	F 0C		- conifer tree species > 75% of canopy cover	
Fresh - Moist Hemlock Coniferous Forest Ecosite	FOC3		- Hemlock dominated - White Pries. Balsean Fr and White Cedar regimes and, to a lesser extent, Yellova Birch, eardis associated associated or shrub and herb richness increase on shrub and her richness increase on moist sites; fem rich wood Fems, Bluebead Llly, Stanfower, ereas, b Goldthread and Foamflower, with high Goldthread and Foamflower.	- moist (4,5,6) to fresh (2,3) soil moisture eguines - eards, casre loams and fine loams; typically have finer silt and clay components - well (3) to imperfect (5) soil dreinage - middle to lower stopes (3,4,5), seepage - middle to lower stopes (3,4,5), seepage with high water table and complex microtopography (6)
Fresh – Moist Hemlock Coniferous Forest Type	F0C3-1	×	X X - Hemlock dominant, White Cedar < 25% of canopy cover	
Fresh – Moist White Cedar Coniferous Forest Ecosite FOC4	F0C4		- White Ceder dominant - Baleam Fir, Hemlock end, to a leaser extent, White Pine, Yellow Birch, Sugar Maple, Green Ash and White Birch associates arth and herb cover and species richness low, fern rich - Sanstitve Fern, Marsh Fern, Spotted Touch-me-not and Cinnamon Fern	- moist (4,5,6) to fresh (2,3) soil moisture segimes - moderately well (4) to poor (6) soil drainage - typically on basic or carborate bubbratas and bedrock; moist yet well drained - middle to lower slopes (3,4,5), seepage arreat and bottomlands (5,6)
Fresh - Moist White Cedar Coniferous Forest Type	FOC4-1	×	FOC4-1 X X - dominated entirely by White Cedar	
Fresh – Moist White Cedar – Hemlock Conferous Forest Type	F0C4-2	×	- White Cedar dominant (> 25% of canopy cover), with Hemlock	
Fresh – Moist White Cedar – Balsam Fir Coniferous Forest Type	FOC4-3 ×	×	- White Cedar dominant (> 25% of canopy cover) with Balsam Fir	

Forest	Ğ.	.	- tree cover > 60%	- site conditions and substrate types variable
Mixed Forest	FOM	8 5	- conifer tree species > 25% and deciduous tree species > 25% of canopy cover	
Dry Oak – Pine Mixed Forest Ecosite	FOM1	<u> </u>	- Red Oak, White Oak, Chinquapin Oak, Pitch Pine, White Pine and Red Pine in variable mixtures - Low Sweet Blusbarry, Buffalo Berry and Common Juriper - Bracken Fern	- dry (8,0) to moderately fresh (1) soil moisture regimes - shallow soils over bedrock, rock, sands and coarse loems - rapid (2) to well (3) soil drainage - droughty conditions and shallow soils play important roles - upper to middle stope (1,2,3) and labbletand (7) topographic positions
Dry Pitch Pine – Oak Mixed Forest Type	FOM1-1 ×		- Pritch Pine. Red Gak and, to a lesser extent. White Gak in variable mixtures - Common Hair Grass, Panic Grass and Bracken Fern	- restricted to the shallow substrates and bare rock surfaces easociated with rock outcrops (knobs and ridges) on the Canadian Shield (Frontenac County)
Dry Chinquapin Oak – Pine Mixed Forest Type	FOM1-2	Pine Price . Price . Brac	- Chinquapin Oak with Red Pine and White Pine - Prickly Ash and Fragrant Sumac - Bracken Fern	- on droughty, well dramed sands or shallow soils over carbonate, basic or acidic bedrock
Dry – Fresh White Pine – Mapte – Oak Mixed Forest Ecosite	FOM2	Y of a second se	- White Pine with Sugar Maple, Red Oak and, to a lesser actart, White Dek, dominant appecies varies. Red Maple, Basswood, White Ash and from too associates. Fact Maple, Busswood, White Ash and sond, Low Sweet Bluebery and Partridgeberry, Whitergrae, Downy Arrowwood, Low Sweet Blueberry and Partridgeberry - Backer Fern, Gaywings, Braite-leaved Abountain-rice	- dry (9,0) to fresh (1,2,3) soil moisture regimes - on searis, coarse loans and shellow soils over bedrock or rock - upper to middle slope (1,2,3) and tableland (7) topographic positions
Dry - Fresh White Pine - Oak Mixed Forest Type	FOM2-1 X	≯ ×	FOM2-1 X X · White Pine with Red Oak >> White Oak	
Dry – Fresh White Pine – Sugar Maple Mixed Forest Type	FOM2-2 x x	×	- White Pine with Sugar Maple	

	-	laple or	FOM3-1 X X - Sugar Maple 5.25% of the canopy cover cm)	Hemilock with Sugar Maple, Sugar Maple > - typically on deeper sands and loams with 25k dicanopy cover X A canopy cover as sesociates associates	- White Ceder with White Birch, Largetooth - moderately dry (0) to fresh (1,2) soil moisture Aspen, Trembling Aspen, Sugar Maple and regimes - than rapresent a second growth anising on bedrock: common on besic and carbonate heavily managed, grazed or disturbed eites substitutes and bedrock.	×	×	
3	Ē	FOM3	FOM3-1 >	FOM3-2 >	FOM4	FOM4-1 X X	FOM4-2 X X	
	Mixed Folesi	Dry - Fresh Hardwood - Hemlock Mixed Forest Ecosite	Dry – Fresh Hardwood – Hemlock Mixed Forest Type	Dry Fresh Sugar Maple - Hemlock Mixed Forest Type FOM3-2 X X	Dry – Fresh White Cedar Mixed Forest Ecosite	Dry – Fresh White Cedar – White Birch Mixed Forest Type	Dry - Fresh White Cedar Poplar Mixed Forest Type	

FOM5-2 X X

Dry - Fresh Poplar Mixed Forest Type

Forest	5	\vdash	- tree cover > 60%	- site conditions and substrate types variable
Mixed Forest	FOM	+	-conifer tree species > 25% and deciduous tree species > 25% of canopy cover	
Fresh – Moist Hemlock Mixed Forest Ecosite	FOM6		- Hemlock with Sugar Maple and Yellow - moist (4.5.6) to very fresh (3) moisture Birch, dominant species varies regimes - Red Maple, White Birch, Berch, Black Ash - sands and loams, less commonly on clays and White Ceder associates - low strub and herb cover rindele to lower slopes (3.4.5), seepage areas and bottomland (6) topographic positions	- moist (4,5,6) to very fresh (3) moisture regimes - sands and loams, less commonly on clay, ewell (3) to very poor (7) soil drainage - middle to lower stopes (3,4,5), seepage areas and bottonland (6) topographic positions
Fresh - Moist Sugar Maple - Hemlock Mixed Forest Type FOM6-1 X X	FOM6-1	×	1101212	Hemiock with Sugar Maple Sugar Maple > -typically on the fresher end of the moisture 55% of canopy cover. White Brich, Ash species, Beech and -middle to flower slopes (3.4.5) and tablelands or bottomiands with complex Jack-in-the-pulpit, Intermediate Wood microtopography (8)
Fresh – Moist Hemlock – Hardwood Mixed Forest Type	FOM6-2 x	×	Hemlock with Yellow Birch, Red Maple, Black Ash and White Cedar associates, Sugar Maple < 25% of canopy cover Starflower, Qak Fern, Bluebead Lily and Goldthread	- typically on the moist end of the moisture regime gradient - tower slopes (4.5), seepage areas and bottomlands (5.8)
Fresh – Moist White Cedar – Hardwood Mixed Forest Ecosite	FOM7		White Cedar with Red Maple, Yellow Birch, Ash spp. and White Birch, Ash spp. seciales Springles Wood Fern, Merginal Wood Fern, Wild Sersaparilla and Jack-in-the-pulpit	- moist (4,5,6) to very fresh (3) moisture agoines - sands and loams, less commonly on clays - well (3) to very poor (7) soil drainage - middle to lower stopes (3,4,5), seepage areas and bottomland (6) topographic positions
Fresh – Moist White Cedar - Sugar Maple Mixed Forest Type	FOM7-1 x x	×		- typically on the fresher end of the moisture regime gradent - especially found along the Niagara Escarpment and on steeper river vailey slopes
Fresh – Moist White Cedar – Hardwood Mixed Forest Type	FOM7-2 >	×	FOM7-2 X X Aspen White Birch, Yellow Birch and Red Maple	- typically on the moist end of the moisture regime gradient

19 Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E	:7E	Code 6E7E Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Forest	G.		- tree cover > 60%	- site conditions and substrate types variable
Mixed Forest	FOM		confer tree species > 25% and deciduous tree species > 25% of canopy cover	
Fresh – Moist Poplar – White Birch Mixed Forest Ecosite FOM8	FOM8		- Trembiling Aspen, Largetooth Aspen and White Bach dominant - Battan Fir, Heminock and Black Spruce associaties Spruce associaties Goldfread - Goldfread - Option of Spruce - Option of	- moist (4,5,6) to very fresh (3) moisture applines - soil textures varieble - lower slopes (4,5), seepage areas and bottomland (6) topographic positions
Fresh – Moist Poplar Mixed Forest Type	FOM8-1 × ×	×		
Fresh - Moist White Birch Mixed Forest Type	FOM8-2 X X	×		

Environmental Characteristics	 site conditions and substrate types variable 		- moderately dry (0) to fresh (1,2) moisture regimes — enablew soils over bedrock, rock, sands and coarse loams; absence of finer sits and clays; repid (2) drainage, absence of gley, mottles > 60 cm in depth; subject to droughty conditions - typically on upper to middle slope (1,2,3) or tableand (7) topographic postillions — eithe subject to some extremes in conditions or dishlurbance (e.g., fire, historical land use)				
on Charactenstics		 deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover 	- Red Oak, White Oak and Black Oak separately dominent or in variable mixtures - Red Medie, White Pine and Black Cherry are common associates - Bracker Fern - Cannopy cover variable; often relatively open (80 to 80% cannopy closure)	- Red Oak dominan! - Bracken Fern, Lowbush Blueberry, Wintergreen and Starflower	- White Öak dominant - Bracken Fern Lowbush Blueberry, Wintergreen and Startlower	- Black Oak dominant - Bracken Fern	more than two Oak species dominant - Red Oak >> White Oak > Black Oak - Bracken Fern
9E7E				×	×	×	×
- 1				×		ю	4
Code	FO	FOD	F0D1	FOD1-1	F0D1-2	FOD1-3	F0D1-4
Nested ELC Community Units	Forest	Deciduous Forest	Dry – Fresh Oak Deciduous Forest Ecosite	Dry – Fresh Red Oak Deciduous Forest Type	Dry – Fresh White Oak Deciduous Forest Type	Dry - Fresh Black Oak Deciduous Forest Type	Dry – Fresh Mixed Oak Deciduous Forest Type

Environmental Characteristics	- site conditions and substrate types variable		- moderately dry (0) to fresh (1,2) moisture regimes coarse loams with silt and day components, along with fine loams and clays; moderate chainage; absence of gley; mottles > prevail. Provail - typically on upper to middle stope (1,2,3) or typically outper to middle stope (1,2,3) or typically or topographic positions - prevailing conditions limiting yet not extreme				
Vegetation Characteristics	- tree cover > 60%	- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover	Red Oak >> le, Hickory, le, Hickory, le, Hickory, le, Hickory, le, Cover spetices, if and Zigzag con dry to	FOD2-1 X X - either Oak >> White Oak	FOD2-2 X X Hickory > Shagbark Hickory - either Oak or Hickory - either Oak or Hickory	FOD2-3 X X - Bitternut Hickory > Shagbark Hickory	Ash, Beech, Basswood, Inowood and Black Cherry associates. Sugar Maple s. 25%, canopy cover r. 1.6 Sugar Maple is close to or in equal proportions to. Oak (> 25%) see Dry - Fresh Sugar Maple – Oak Deciduous.
E7E				×	×	×	×
99				 ~	× -	~	×
Code 6E7E	6	90 <u>-</u>	F0D2	FOD2-	F002-2	FOD2-	FOD2~
			cidnous	rest Type	t Type		rest Type
Nested ELC Community Units	Forest	Deciduous Forest	Dry – Fresh Oak – Maple – Hickory Deciduous Forest Ecosite	Dry – Fresh Oak – Red Maple Deciduous Forest Type	Dry – Fresh Oak – Hickory Deciduous Forest Type	Dry - Fresh Hickory Deciduous Forest Type	Dry – Fresh Oak – Hardwood Deciduous Forest Type

Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E7E	E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Forest	ō.		- Irea cover > 60%	- site conditions and substrate types variable
Deciduous Forest	95 6		- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover	
Dry – Fresh Poplar – White Birch Deciduous Forest Ecosite	FOD3		- Trembling Aspen, Largetooth Aspen or White Birch dominant of the represents second growth arising on theavity managed, grazed or disturbed sites (e.g., cutting, clearing)	- moderately dry (0) to fresh (1,2,3) soil moisture regimes - shallow substrates over bedrock, rock, sands and coarse loams - upper to middle stope (1,2,3) or tableland (7) topographic positions
Dry – Fresh Poplar Deciduous Forest Type	FOD3-1	×	- Trembling Aspen, Largetooth Aspen demonated separately or in warable mixtures - Sugar Maple Red Maple. Red Maple Red Showy Tick-trefoil where canopy is open White Trillium, Bedstraws, Large-leaved Aster and Bracken Ferr Kentucky Bluegrass and Showy Tick-trefoil where canopy is open White Trillium, Bedstraws, Large-leaved Aster and Bracken Ferr where canopy is	
Dry – Fresh White Birch Deciduous Forest Туре	FOD3-2 X		White Birch dominant argetooth Aspen and cargetooth Aspen are common associates typically represents an early successional stage with high shrub and herb cover and species richness	- occurs mainly on the fresh (1 2,3) soil moisture regimes

23	Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6 E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Fo	Forest	G.	2.	- tree cover > 60%	site conditions and substrate types variable
	Deciduous Forest	FOD		- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover	
j	Dry - Fresh Deciduous Forest Ecosite	FOD4		- tree species associations that are either relatively uncommon or a result of disturbance or management - Sugar Maple absent or less than 10% of campy cover	- moderately dry (0) to fresh (1,2,3) moisture regimes - sends and loams - well (3) to moderately well (4) drained solls - upper to middle alopes (2,3,4) or tableland (7) topographic positions
	Dry - Fresh Beech Deciduous Forest Type	FOD4-1	×	X X - Beech dominant	
	Dry – Fresh White Ash Deciduous Forest Type FOD4-2 X X - Ironwood. Trenbing Aspen. Largetooth Largetooth Sapen and White Birch associates - likely disturbance- or management-relate	FOD4-2	×	White Ash dominant Ironwood, Trembling Aspen, Largetooth Aspen and White Birch associates Ikkely disturbance- or management-related	
	Dry – Fresh Hackberry Deciduous Forest Type	FOD4-3	×	Hackberry dominant or in association withusually on carbonate s Red Oak, Basswood, Chinquapin Oak, Whiteover carbonate bedrock Ash and Green Ash. X_Long-styled Sweet-cicely. Herb Robert,only found in the extreme southwest of 7E.	- usually on carbonate sands or shallow soils over carbonate bedrock

rested EEC Community Chilis	2000	7	Vegetation originalistics	CITATION INTERIOR CITATION CO.
Forest	6		- tree cover > 60%	- site conditions and substrate types variable
Deciduous Forest	FOD		- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover	
Dry – Fresh Sugar Maple Deciduous Forest Ecosite	FODS		- Sugar Maple with Beach, Red Oak, White Oak, Inchroord, Basavood, Blated, Chenry, Bittanuth Hidcory, Shagbark Hidcory, White Ash. Red Maple, White Birch, Trembling Aspen and Largelooth Aspen; dominant aspecies may vary - heavily managed, grazed or disturbed sites tend to be relatively lacking in shrub and -understoray vegatation - Alternate Jeaved Dogwood, Raspberry and Red Elderberry Red Elderberry - Trillium spp., Wild Sarsaparilla, Blue Corbosh, Jasckin-the-pulpit and Wild Leek	- moderately dry (0) to fresh (12,3) acil moterate regimes acil moterate regimes shallow soils over bedrook, rock, sand loams rapid (2) to well (3) drained sites (12,3) or lablelands (7) with suitable drainage
Dry - Fresh Sugar Maple Deciduous Forest Type	FOD5-1	×	- almost entirely dominated by Sugar Maple	
Dry - Fresh Sugar Maple - Beech Deciduous Forest Type	FOD5-2	×		
Dry – Fresh Sugar Maple – Oak Deciduous Forest Type	FOD5-3	×	- Sugar Maple with Red Oak >> White Oak	
Dry - Fresh Sugar Maple - Ironwood Deciduous Forest Type	FOD5-4	×	- common on managed (e.g., cutting) or historically grazed siles	
Dry – Fresh Sugar Maple – Hickory Deciduous Forest Type	FOD5-5	×	- Sugar Maple with Bitternut Hickory >> Shagbark Hickory	- coarse and fine loams with a silt and clay content
Dry - Fresh Sugar Maple - Basswood Deciduous Forest Type FOD5-6		×		
Dry – Fresh Sugar Maple – Black Cherry Deciduous Forest Type	FOD5-7	×		
Dry - Fresh Sugar Maple - White Ash Deciduous Forest Type FOD5-8		×		
Dry – Fresh Sugar Maple – Red Maple Deciduous Forest Type	FOD5-9	×		
Dry – Fresh Sugar Maple – White Birch – Poplar Deciduous Forest Type	FOD5-10 X X	×		THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY O

Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E7E	E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Forest	ව		- tree cover > 60%	 site conditions and substrate types variable
Deciduous Forest	G.	-	- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover	
Fresh Moist Sugar Maple Deciduous Forest Ecosite FOD6	FOD		- Sugar Maple with Green Ash, Black Ash, - moist (4,5,6) to fresh (2,3) moisture Red Maple, White Em, Yellow Bich, Basswood and Beech associates, dominar species varies - sasedfras, Leckberry and to a tesser - sasedfras, Leckberry and to a tesse - sasedfras, Leckberry and tesser - sasedfras, Leckberry and tesser - sasedfras, Leckberry an	- moiet (4.5,6) to fresh (2.3) moisture programs - imperfect (5) to poor (6) soil drainage - sands, loans, reasly on clays, soils may be peatly phase minerel (accumulations of organic meterial 20 to 40 cm) - middle to lower stopes (3.4.5), - middle to lower stopes (3.4.5), - middle to lower stopes (3.4.5), (ab) - represents with complex microtopography (3) - represents the wettend (evernp) – temestrial transitional
Fresh – Moist Sugar Maple – Lowland Ash Deciduous Forest Type	FOD6-1	×	FOD6-1 X X - Sugar Maple with Green Ash. Black Ash - occurs on a variety of different types of most common, widespread type	 occurs on a variety of different types of sites
Fresh – Moist Sugar Maple – Black Maple Deciduous Forest Type	FOD6-2 x x	×		- moist yet well drained sites, often along floodplains
Fresh - Moist Sugar Maple - Yellow Birch Deciduous Forest Type	FOD6-3 ×		- often associated with conferous species, - most yet well drained sites, most Hemlock, Balsam Fir or White Cedar may common on lower slopes and sites with be associate	- moist yet well drained sites, most common on lower slopes and sites with complex microtopography
Fresh – Moist Sugar Maple – White Elm Deciduous Forest Type	FOD6-4 × ×	×		- most yet well drained sites, often along floodplains
Fresh – Moist Sugar Maple – Hardwood Deciduous Forest Type	FOD6-5	×	FOD6-5 X X Sugar Maple on moist soils may include Rech, Basswood, Oak, Hickory, Red	 most yet well drained sites, site typically dries by mid- to late summer, often a site with complex microtopography or along

Mested CLC Community Chica	6	E	- tree cover > 60%	 site conditions and substrate types variable
Posidions Forest	2 8	1	- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy	
Jeona I olean				
Fresh ~ Moist Lowland Deciduous Forest Ecosite FOD7	FOD7		- While Em, Willows, Black Wahut, Black Maple, Basavood Green Alan Black Ash dominate separately or in varieble mixtures - Rad Maple, White Birth, Hackbern, - Rad Maple, White Birth, Hackbern, - Sycamore and Suger Maple associates - Sycamore and Suger Maple associates - Eule Beach, Atternate-leaved Dogwood and - Eule Beach, Atternate-leaved Dogwood and - Lower slopes (4.5) with seapage and - Lower slopes (4.5) with seapage and - Lower slopes (4.5) with seapage and - Lower slopes (4.5) with despension by - Induate of hanceous species common to wet sites, auch as Sensitive Fem. Foam Flower and Sported Touch-ma-not along with common - Choosh and Jack-in-the-pulpit	- moist (4, 5, 6) to fresh (2, 3) moisture regimes and fine loams and occasionally sands and edgy, all soils have finer silt and clay components and clay components — well (3) to poor (6) soil drainege and bodromiands (5, 8), aspecially floodplain by pically in rich areas where deposition due to flooding occurs yet drying occurs by mid- to late summer
Fresh - Moist White Elm Lowland Deciduous Forest	FOD7-1 X X	×		
Туре				
Fresh - Moist Ash Lowland Deciduous Forest Type	FOD7-2	×	FOD7-2 X X - Green Ash Black Ash	
Fresh Moist Willow Lowland Deciduous Forest Type	FOD7-3	×	FOD7-3 X historical clearing and/planting, shoreline disturbances) or disturbances	 typically associated with riparian zones and terraces, stream and river banks and floodplains
Fresh – Moist Black Walnut Lowland Deciduous Forest Type	FOD7-4	×		 typically associated with riparian zones and terraces, stream and river banks and floodplains
Fresh Moist Black Maple Lowland Deciduous Forest Type	FOD7-5	×		 typically associated with riparian zones and terraces, stream and river banks and floodplains
		1		

27 Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E7E	E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Forest	6		- tree cover > 60%	- site conditions and substrate types variable
Deciduous Forest	FOD		- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover	
Fresh – Moist Poplar – Sassafras Deciduous Forest Ecosite	FOD8		- sites dominated by Trembling Aspen, Largotroft Aspen or Sesanthas successional) forest that has followed a major disturbance a major of seturbance of setu	- most (4,5,6) to fresh (2,3) moisture eval, coarse and fine loams and occasionally clay - soil drainege ranges from well (3) to imperior (5) and occasionally on poor (6) - found on a variety of topographic positions
Fresh - Moist Poplar Deciduous Forest Type	FOD8-1 X X	×		
Fresh - Moist Sassafras Deciduous Forest Type	FOD8-2	×		

28 Nested ELC Community Units	Code bE/E		Environmental Characteristics
Forest	6	- tree cover > 60%	 site conditions and substrate types variable
Deciduous Forest	РОБ	- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover	
Fresh – Moist Oak – Maple – Hickory Deciduous FOD9	FOD9	- Red Oak, White Oak, Bur Oak, Sugar Mapie, Red Mebie, Shapbark History and Bitternut Hickory dominate separately or in varieble mixtures in represents the forest-ewang (terrestrial-wetland) interface - almost exclusive to Site Region 7E - mixture of forestrial and wetland species characteristic: Trilliums, Violets, Jack-in-the-pulpit and Wild Geranium with Marsh Fem, Sensitive Fern and Spotted Touch-me-not shipper abundance and diversity of sedges and fams	- moist (4,5,6) to fresh (2,3) moisture regimes - fearer and delay - imperfect (5) to poor (8,7) drainage - lower slopes (4,5), seepage area, bottomlands (5,6) and labelands with poor drainage and complex microtopography (8)
Fresh – Moist Oak – Sugar Maple Deciduous Forest Type	FOD9-1	- Red Oak >> White Oak with Sugar Maple - White Avers. Wild Geranium, Trilliums and X Spotted Touch-me-not	- moist to fresh clays >> loams and sands - lower topographic positions or tablelands with complex microtopography
Fresh – Moist Oak – Maple Deciduous Forest Type	FOD9-2	Red Oak >> White Oak with Red Maple Sliver Mapte and Swamp Maple (Acer Reeman) A has greater proportion of wetland species Swamp Fern Sensitive Fern and Wild Blue- flag	- moist sands loams and clays - lower topographic positions or on tablelands with complex microtopography
Fresh – Moist Bur Oak Deciduous Forest Type	FOD9-3	Basswood Sensitive Fern Sensitive Fern	- moist sands and coarse loams - lower valley slopes and bottomlands
Fresh – Moist Shagbark Hickory Deciduous Forest Type	F0D9-4	Shagbark Hickory with Red Maple. White Ash and Green Ash X. Blue Been and Running Strawberry Bush Wild Genanium White Avens. Jack-in-the. Public Beence of really wet spec	moist clays >> fine loams - lover topographic positions and bottomiands - absence of really wet species suggests a drying of soil during the season
Fresh – Moist Bitternut Hickory Deciduous Forest Type FOD9-5		Bitternut Hickory with Green Ash, White Elm Sugar Maple and Red Maple Spotled Touch-me-not Sensitive Fern White Avens and May Apple	moist loams with silt and clay content lower topographic positions and bottomlands bottomlands absence of really wet species suggests a drying of soil during the season

	300	Vegetation original	
		- tree cover > 60%	 site conditions and substrate trace variable
Cultural	3		- community resulting from, or maintained by, cultural or anthrocoenic-based disturbances.
Plantation	CUP		
Deciduous Plantations	CUP1	- deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover	nopy
Sugar Maple Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-1 X		
Basswood Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-2 X		
Black Walnut Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-3 X	×	
Hybrid Poplar Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-4 ×		
Silver Maple Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-5	×	
Red Maple Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-6	×	
Green Ash Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-7	×	
Red Oak Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-8	×	
Sassafras Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-9	×	
Tulip Tree Deciduous Plantation Type	CUP1-10	×	
Mixed Plantations	CUP2	- coniferous tree species > 25% and deciduous tree species > 25% of canopy cover	deciduous
Black Walnut - White Pine Mixed Plantation Type	CUP2-1	×	
Coniferous Plantations	cups	- conferous tree species > 75% of canopy	napy
Red Pine Coniferous Plantation Type	CUP3-1 ×	×	
White Pine Coniferous Plantation Type	CUP3-2 X	××	
Scotch Pine Coniferous Plantation Type	CUP3-3 X		
Jack Pine Coniferous Plantation Type	CUP3-4 X		
Tamarack - European Larch Coniferous Plantation Type	CUP3-5 X		
European Larch Coniferous Plantation Type	CUP3-6 X		
Japanese Larch – European Larch Conferous Plantation Type	CUP3-7 X		
White Spruce - European Larch Coniferous Plantation Type	CUP3-8 X		
Norway Spruce - European Larch Coniferous Plantation Type CUP3-9	CUP3-9 X		
Red Spruce - European Larch Coniferous Plantation Type	CUP3-10 X		
Disch Course I course I course			

Service and community of the	3000	200	all de la contrata de character de la contrata del la contrata de la contrata del la contrata de
Cultural	CO	 tree cover s outs often having a large proportion of non-native plant species 	 riee cover s buts. riee cover s buts. rie community resulting from or mentalive - community resulting from or mentalined by, plant species
Cultural Meadow	Wno	- tree cover s 25%, shrub cover s 25%	
Mineral Cultural Meadow Ecosite	CUM1		- parent mineral material or mineral soil
Dry - Moist Old Field Meadow Type	CUM1-1 X	××	
Bedrock Cultural Meadow Ecosite	CUM2		- carbonate, basic or acidic bedrock
Cultural Thicket	CUT	- tree cover <25%, shrub cover > 25%	
Mineral Cultural Thicket Ecosite	CUT1		- parent mineral material or mineral soil
Sumac Cultural Thicket Type	CUT1-1 X X	×	
Serviceberry Cultural Thicket Type	CUT1-2 X X	×	
Chokecherry Cultural Thicket Type	CUT1-3 X X	×	
Gray Dogwood Cultural Thicket Type	CUT1-4 X X	×	
Raspberry Cultural Thicket Type	CUT1-5 X X	×	
Poison Ivy Cultural Thicket Type	CUT1-6 X X	×	
Bedrock Cultural Thicket Ecosite	CUT2		- carbonate, basic or acidic bedrock
Common Juniper Cultural Alvar Thicket Type	CUT2-1 X		- carbonate (limestone) bedrock
Cultural Savannah	Sno	- 25% < tree cover < 35%	
Mineral Cultural Savannah Ecosite	CUS1		- parent mineral material or mineral soll
Hawthorn Cultural Savannah Type	CUS1-1 X X	×	
White Cedar - Green Ash Cultural Savannah Type	CUS1-2 X		
Dry Red Oak Cultural Savannah Type	CUS1-3	×	
Bedrock Cultural Savannah Ecosite	CUS2		parent mineral material or mineral soil
Cultural Woodland	cnw	- 35% < tree cover ≤ 60%	
Mineral Cultural Woodland Ecosite	CUW1		- parent mineral material or mineral soil
Red Cedar Cultural Woodland Type	CUW1-1 X X	×	
Dry Red Oak Cultural Woodland Type	CUW1-2 X X	×	
Bedrock Cultural Woodland Ecosite	CUW2		- carbonate, basic or acidic bedrock
Red Cedar Cultural Alvar Woodland Type	CUW2-1 X		- carbonate (Imestone) bedrock
Hawthorn Cultural Alvar Woodland Type	CUW2-2	×	- carbonate (limestone) bedrock

		Wetl	and Com	munit	y Tables			
Environmental Characteristics	- variable flooding regimes - water depth < 2 m - standing water or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage		- mineral and peaty phase mineral (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) authorities - areas where flooding duration is elect - authorities acrated by early to mid-surmer			- mineral and peaky phase mineral (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) authaties commulations 20 to 40 cm) authaties a where flooding duration is short - substrate sentited by early to mid-summit or by early in furnmook and hollow, complex microtopography		
Vegetation Charactenstics	- tree or shrub cover > 25% - valer depth of y hydrophytic strub and tree species - valer depth < 2 m - dominated by hydrophytic strub and tree species - standing water or y 20% of ground over	- tree cover > 25%, trees > 5 m in height - confler the species > 75% of camppy cover - typically has a more northern compliment of species, including Bunchberry, Dwarf Raspberry, Wintergreen, Staffower, Goldthread, Canada Mayflower, Naked Mitrewort, Dewdrop, Bluebead - Inja and Horselalia - richer conflerous swamps, especially on organic - autostrates, may have Fty Honeysuckle, Swamp Red Currant, Mountain Maple, Cinnamon Fam and Royal Fern	- White Cedar with Balsam Fir, Hemlock, White - mineral and peaty phase mineral Spruze and, to a lease actorn, White Birch, Yellow (organic sozumlations 20 to 40 cm) Birch, White Pine, Biack Ash and Red Maple: substitutes authorise fooding duration is abort – authorise are also be serviced by early to the contract of the contract o	 almost entirely dominated by White Cedar understorey very shaded, having few species and little cover 	- White Cedar with Baisam Fir, Hemlock, White Spruce and White Pine - understorey cover and species richness dependant on degree of tree canopy closure and shading.	- White Pine or Hemlock with Red Maple, Yellow Birch and White Birch; dominant species may vary		
6E7E				×	×		×	×
Code	SW	SWC	SWC1	SWC1-1 X	SWC1-2	SWC2	SWC2-1 X X	SWC2-2 X X
31 Nested ELC Community Units	Swamp	Coniferous Swamp	White Cedar Mineral Coniferous Swamp Ecosite SWC1	White Cedar Mineral Coniferous Swamp Type	White Cedar – Confer Mineral Conferous Swamp Type SWC1-2 X	White Pine – Hemlock Mineral Coniferous Swamp Ecosite	White Pine Mineral Coniferous Swamp Type	Hemlock Mineral Coniferous Swamp Type

43	
	_
63.0	
	_
63	
-	
	ها
_	
-	
	هيا

32 Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E7E	E Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Swamp	SW	- tree or ainub cover > 25% - dominated by hydrophytic strub and tree species	 variable flooding regimes water depth < 2 m standing water or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage
Coniferous Swamp	swc	- tree cover > 25%; trees > 5 m in height - conflet tree species > 75% of carnopy cover - conflet tree species > 75% of carnopy cover - typically has a more northern compliment of species including Burncherny, Dwarf Raspberry, Wintargeen, Staffowar, Goldhread, Canada Mayflower, Naked Mitrewort, Devictor, Bluebead Lilly and Horsehale (Equiselum spp.) - richer confletous swamps, especially on organic substrates, may have Fly Honeysuckle, Swamp Red Currant, Mountain Maple, Clinnamon Fern and Royal Fern	
White Cedar Organic Coniferous Swamp Ecosite	SWC3	- White Cedar with Tamarack Balsam Fir organic st Black Spruze, Hemock, White Spruce and, to (OIP 1985) a lesser extent, White Pine, Yellow Birch and White Birch - understorey typically very shaded, having	organic substrates – Of, Om, Oh (OIP 1985)
White Cedar Organic Coniferous Swamp Type	SWC3-1 X	SWC3-1 X X - almost entirely dominated by White Cedar	
White Cedar – Confer Organic Conferous Swamp Type	SWC3-2 X	SWC3-2 X X alesser extent, White Pine, SWC3-2 X a lesser extent, White Pine, Yellow Bird, White Bird, Cominant secees will vary	

SS Nested ELC Community Units	Code	DE / E	_	vegetation unal autenstics	Environmental orial acteristics
Swamp	MS		,,,,	- tree or shrub cover > 25% - dominated by hydrophytic shrub and tree species	 variable flooding regimes water depth < 2 m standing water or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage
Coniferous Swamp	swc		0.0000000000000000000000000000000000000	- tree cover > 25%, trees > 5 m in height confer tree species > 75% of canopy covar . typically has a more northern compliment of species, including Bunchberry, Owart Raspberry, Writergreen, Starflower, Goldthrasd, Canada Mayflower, Naked Mitrewort, Dewdrop, Bluebead Lily and Horstalis - richer conferious swamps, especially on organic substrates, may have Fly Honeysuckle, Swamp Red Currant, Mountain Maple, Cinnamon Fern and Royal Fam	
Tamarack – Black Spruce Organic Coniferous Swamp Ecosite	SWC4		10121220	- Tamarack and Black Spruce dominant - organic substrates – Of, Om, Oh (Oilp rainstein mixtures a mixtures - typically found associated with or incling Boga and Fens - if associated with Boga or Fens - if associated with Godon-grass - if associated with	- organic substrates – Of, Om, Oh (Oil 1985)
Tamarack - Black Spruce Organic Conferous Swamp Type SWC4-1 X X	SWC4-1	×	×		
Tamarack Organic Coniferous Swamp Type	SWC4-2 X X	×	×		
Black Spruce Organic Coniferous Swamp Type	SWC4-3 X	×	\vdash		

•
-
-
-

SWAIND	34 Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6	6E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
All bright conference of the cover 255 fm in height conference of the cover 255 fm in height conference or species 255 fm in height con	Swamp	SW		- tree or shrub cover > 25% - dominated by hydrophylic shrub and tree apacies	 variable flooding regimes water depth < 2 m; standing water or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage
SWM1 SWM1-1 X X	Mixed Swamp	SWM		- tree cover > 25%, trees > 5 m in height conferous tree species > 25% and conferous tree species > 25% and conferous tree species > 25% of canopy cover trees are mixture of typical confer swamp and deciduous swamp species; Bunchberry, Staffower, Goldthread, Bluebeed Lilly, Maked Mitteword along with Bedstrews, Fowl Menne Gress, Spotted Touch-me-not, Skurik Cabbage, Marsh Marigold and Sedges - typically fern rich, Sensitive Fern. Cinnemon Fern, Royel Fern, Marsh Fern and Ostrich Fern	
SWM1-1 X X - Red Maple or Swamp Maple (Acer freement) with Hentock, Balsam Fir, White Blich, Tamarack, White Blich, Yellow Birch, Balsam Popler and Trembling Aspen; dominant species will vary SWM2-1 X X Aspen, Balsam Popler with Hentock, Balsam Fir and White Pine; dominant species will vary SWM3-1 X X Species will vary SWM3-1 X X SWM3-2 X X X	White Cedar Mineral Mixed Swamp Ecosite	SWM1		- White Ceder with White Birch, Yellow Park, Green Ash, Black Ash, Tambling Aspen, Balsam Fir, Red Maple, Balsam Popler and White Elm; dominant species will vary	mineral and peaty phase mineral (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) substrates areas where flooding duration is alvol - sureas where substrate aerated by early to mid-surmer.
SWM2 SWM2 SWM2 SWM3-1 X X Swamp Mapie (Acer freenanch) with the hamlock, Balasm Fir, White Birth, Tellow Birch, Balasm Proplar and Trembling Aspen; dominant species will vary SWM2-1 X X SWM2-2 X X A Swamp Major Birch, Trembling Aspen, Balasm Poplar with Hemiock, Balasm Fir and White Pine; dominant species will vary SWM3-1 X X SWM3-1 X X SWM3-2 X X	White Cedar – Hardwood Mineral Mixed Swamp Type	SWM1-1	×		
SWM2-1 X X SWM2-2 X X	Maple Mineral Mixed Swamp Ecosite	SWM2		- Red Maple or Swamp Maple (Acer Maple Performant) with Hemicox, Balsam Fr., White Pine, Tamanack, White Birch, Yellow Birch, Blassam Poplar and Trembling Aspen; dominant species will vary	
SWM2-2 X X - White Birch, Yellow Birch, Trembling Aspen, Balsam Poplar with Hemlock, Balsam Fir and White Pine, dominant species will vary SWM3-1 X X SWM3-2 X X	Red Maple - Conifer Mineral Mixed Swamp Type	SWM2-1	×		
SVVM3 SVVM3 SVVM3 SPECIES WIII vary SVVM3-1 X X SVVM3-2 X X	Swamp Maple - Conifer Mineral Mixed Swamp Type		×	144	
SWM3-1 X X SWM3-2 X X	Birch – Poplar Mineral Mixed Swamp Ecosite	SWM3		- White Birch, Yellow Birch, Trembling spech, Balsam Poplar with Hemlock, Balsam Fir and White Pine; dominant species will vary	mineral and peaty phase mineral (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) aubstrates areas where flooding duration is abort - access where ploosing abort a substrate aerated by early to mid-aummer.
	Birch - Conifer Mineral Mixed Swamp Type		×		
	Poplar - Conifer Mineral Mixed Swamp Type	SWM3-2	×		

35	Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Swamp		SW		- tree or shrub cover > 25% - variable flooding n - dominated by hydrophytic shrub and tree - vatar depth < 2 m species - stending water or v 20% of ground cover	 variable flooding regimes water depth < 2 m stending water or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage
Mixed Swamp	amp	SWM		- tree cover > 25%, trees > 5 m in height decideduc tree species > 25% and conflerous tree species > 25% and conflerous tree species > 25% and conclerous tree species > 25% of cancey cover to the species of the species swamp and decideous swamp species Bunchberny, Starflower, Goldthread, Bunchberny, Starflower, Goldthread, Bulcebead Littly, Naked Mittewort along with Bedstews, Fowl Manna Grass, Spotted Touch-me-not, Skurk Cabbage, Marth Manigoula and Sedges - typically ferm rich; Sensitive Fern, Cinnamon Fern, Royal Fern, Marsh Fern and Ostrich Fern	
White Cedar	White Cedar Organic Mixed Swamp Ecosite	SWM4		 White Cedar with Black Ash, Yellow Birch, White Birch, Red Maple, Hemlock and Balsam Fir 	- organic substrates - Of, Om, Oh (OIP 1985)
White Cedar -	White Cedar - Hardwood Organic Mixed Swamp Type	SWM4-1 X X	×		
Mapte Organ	Maple Organic Mixed Swamp Ecosite	SWM5		- Red Maple, Swamp Maple (Acer freemani) with Hemlock, Baleam Fir, White Pine and Tamarack	- organic substrates – Of, Om, Oh (OIP 1985)
Red Maple - C	Red Maple - Conifer Organic Mixed Swamp Type	SWM5-1 X X	×		
Swamp Maple	Swamp Mable - Conifer Organic Mixed Swamp Type	SWM5-2 X	×		

36 Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Swamp	MS	- tree or shrub cover > 25% - don'insted by fydrophytic shrub and tree - water depth < 2 m species - standing water or -	variable flooding regimes water depth < 2 m standing water or vernal pooling >
Mixed Swamp	SWM	- tree cover > 25% trees > 5 m in height deciduous tree species > 25% and confierous tree species > 25% of canopy cover - vegetation is a mixture of typical confier swamp end electhous swamp species; Bunchbern, Starlfower, Goldthread, Bluebead Lily, Naked Mitrewort along with Bedstraw, From Manne Grass, Spotted Touch-me-not, Skunk Cabbage, Marsh Marigold and Sedges. Cinnamon Fern, Royal Fern, Cinnamon Fern, Royal Fern, and Ostroch Fern.	20% of ground converage.
Birch - Poplar Organic Mixed Swamp Ecosite	SWM6	- Yellow Birch, White Birch, Trembling Aspen, Balsam Poplar with Henlock, Balsam Fir, White Pire and Tamerack	- organic substrates Of, Om, Oh (OIP 1985)
Birch - Conifer Organic Mixed Swamp Type	SWM6-1 X X		
Poplar - Conifer Organic Mixed Swamp Type	SWM6-2 X X		

37 Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6F	6E7E Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Swamp	SW	- tree or shrub cover > 25% - dominated by hydrophytic shrub and tree species	 variable flooding regimes water depth < 2 m standing water or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage
Deciduous Swamp	SWD	- tree cover > 25%, trees > 5m in height - dedictious free species > 75% of canopy cover - common species include Fowl Manna Grass, Spotled Touch-me-not, Bugleweed, Skunk Cabbage, Marsh Marigold, Bedstraws and Stinging Nettle - typically fern end sedge nich	
Oak Mineral Deciduous Swamp Ecosite	SWD1	- Swamp White Oak, Bur Oak, Pin Oak, - mineral and peaty ptrase mineral Shumard's Oak with Shapbark Hickory, Green (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm). Ash, Red Maple, Swamp Maple, White Elm, substrates Big Shallbark Hickory and Briternut H	- mineral and peaty phase mineral n (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) substrates - areas where flooding duration is short - substrate serated by early to mid-summer
Swamp White Oak Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD1-1 X X	×	
Bur Oak Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD1-2 X X	×	
Pin Oak Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD1-3	×	
Shumard's Oak Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD1-4	×	
Ash Mineral Deciduous Swamp Ecosite	SWD2	- Black Ash, Green Ash with Red Maple, White Elm, Swamp Maple and Silver Maple	- mineral and peaty phase mineral (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) aubstrates authorities - areas where flooding duration is short - substrate sereted by servi to mid-summer
Black Ash Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD2-1 X X	×	
Green Ash Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD2-2 X X	×	

So Mested ELU Community Units	Code	6E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Swamp	SW		- tree or shrub cover > 25% - dominated by hydrophytic shrub and tree species	- variable flooding regimes - water depth < 2 m - standing water or vernal pooling > 20%
Deciduous Swamp	SWD		- tree cover > 25%, trees > 5 m in height - deciduous tree species > 75% of canopy cover - common species include Fowl Manna Grass, Spotled Touch-me-not, Bugleweed, Skunk Cabbage, Marsh Marigold, Bedstraws and Stinging bettles	of ground covering.
Maple Mineral Deciduous Swamp Ecosite	SWD3		amp Maple and	- mineral and peaty phase mineral (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) substrates - areas where flooding curation is short -
Red Maple Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD3-1	×		SUDSITIBLE SETRIED BY EARLY TO MIC-SUMMER
Silver Maple Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD3-2 X X	×		
Swamp Maple Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD3-3 X X	×		
Manitoba Maple Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD3-4 X X	×		
Mineral Deciduous Swamp Ecosite	SWD4		- less common associations of Willow, White Elm, White Birch, Aspen and Yellow Birch Substrates - eness where flooding duration is a substrates - eness where flooding duration is a substrate avaited by early to mice	- mineral and peaty phase mineral (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) authorities about meas where flooding duration is short — substrate serated by serly to mid-surmer
Willow Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD4-1 X X	Ž	•	- common on floodplains
White Elm Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD4-2 X X	<u> </u>		
White Birch - Poplar Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type SWD4-3 X X	SWD4-3	×		
Yellow Birch Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD4-4 X X	×		

	ماري	9E/E	Vegetation Chalacteristics	
39 Nested ELC Community Units	- 1		AND ASSESSED ASSESSED AND ASSESSED AND ASSESSED ASSESSEDANCE ASSESSED ASSESSEDA ASSESSED ASSESSED ASSESSED ASSESSED ASSESSED ASSESSED ASSESSEDA	- variable flooding regimes
				water death < 2 m
Swamp	SW		- dominated by hydrophysic strub and tree species	- standing water or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage
		1	- tree cover > 25%, trees > 5 m in height	
			 deciduous tree species > 75% of 	
		_	Candoov COVer	
			- common species include Fowl Manna	
	CIVIO		Grass Snotted Touch-me-not.	
Devicing Swamp	OWC.	_	Burleward Skink Cabbade, Marsh	
		_	Mericold Redstraws and Stinging	
	_		Notice	
		_	remes - typically fern and sedge rich	
			,	omanic substrates - Of Om. Oh
	CIVIDS		- Black Ash	
Ach Organic Deciduous Swamp Ecosite	3	_		(OIP 1965)
	CIAIDE	×		
Black Ash Organic Deciduous Swamp ype		۱ د		omanic substrates - Of Om Oh
	SWD6	_	- Red Maple, Silver Maple alta owning	CO 400E)
elistone Company Frontier			Maple (Acer freement)	(5061 190)
Maple Organic December 3 want Process				
day among a series	SWD6-1 X X	×		
Red Maple Organic Deciduous Swallip 1996				
Silver Manle Organic Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD6-2 X X	×		
day among and the same party	SWD6-3 XIX	×		
Swamp Maple Organic Decidoods Swamp 17Pc			Marie Birch Vellow Birch Trembling	- organic substrates - Of, Om, On
Birch - Poplar Organic Deciduous Swamp Ecosite	SWD7		Appen and Balsam Popler	(OIP 1965)
And Decidents Swamp Type	SWD7-1 X X	×		
Wille Dici - Long of Samo constant	C LAID 2	>		
Vellow Rirch Organic Deciduous Swamp Type	SWD/-Z VV	< <		

40 Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Swamp	MS.		- tree or shrub cover > 25% - dominated by hydrophytic shrub and tree species	-variable flooding regimes -variable flooding regimes - water depth < 2 m - standing water or vernal pooling > 20% of oreand conserves
Thicket Swamp	SWT		 tree cover ≤ 25%; hydrophylic shrubs > 25% 	-
Bedrock Thicket Swamp Ecosite	SWT1			- carbonate, basic or acidic bedrock types
Mineral Thicket Swamp Ecosite	SWT2			- mineral and peaty phase mineral (organic accumulations 20 to 40 cm) substrates - areas where flooding duration is short - substrates active to mid-aumment
Alder Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-1	×		
Willow Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-2 X X	×		
Mountain Maple Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-3	×		
Buttonbush Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-4	×		
Red-osier Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-5	×		
Meadowsweet Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-6	×		
Ninebark Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-7	×		
Sifky Dogwood Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-8	×		
Gray Dogwood Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-9	×		
Nannyberry Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-10	×		
Southern Arrow-wood Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-11	×		
Paw-paw Mineral Thicket Swamp Type	SWT2-12 X	×		

strol Atracamon O II bosed	Code 6E7E	E Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Vested ELO Continuida Onios		a vo e or a	- variable flooding regimes
Swamp	NS.	strub and tree species	 water depth < 2 m standing water or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage
Thicket Swamp	SWT	- tree cover s 25%; hydrophytic shrubs > 25%	
Organic Thicket Swamp Ecosite	SWT3		- organic substrates - Of, Om, Of (OIP 1985)
Alder Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-1 X X	\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	
Willow Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-2 X X		
Mountain Maple Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-3 X X		
Buttonbush Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-4 X X	~	
Red-osier Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-5 X X	_	
Sweet Gale Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-6 X X	×	
Winterberry Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-7 X		
Mountain Holly Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-8 X		
Fen Birch Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-9 X		
Gray Dogwood Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-10	×	
Spicebush Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-11	×	
Nannyberry Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-12	×	
Poison Sumac Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-13	×	
Huckleberry Organic Thicket Swamp Type	SWT3-14	×	t

42 Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Fen	FE		- tree cover (trees > 2m high) < 25% - sud - aedges, grasses and low (< 2 m) shrubs mos dominate - rar - pri - mi	- substrate organic; > 40 cm of brown mose or sedge peat: - rarely flooded, slvaye saturated - PH is stightly alkaline to mildly acidic - mirerdrophic peatland
Open Fen	FEO		- tree cover £ 10%; shrub cover ≤ 25%	
Open Fen Ecosite	FE01	-		
Twig-rush Open Fen Type	FE01-1 X X	×		
Slender Sedge Open Fen Type	FE01-2 X	×	- Slender Sedge (Carex lasiocarpa)	
Low Sedge - Clubrush Open Fen Type	FE01-3 X	×		
Bog Buckbean – Sedge Open Fen Type	FE014 X	×		
Beaked Sedge Open Fen Type	FE01-5 X	×	- Beaked Sedge (Carex utriculata)	
Shrub Fen	FES	-	- tree cover x 10%; shrub cover > 25%	
Shrub Fen Ecosite	FES1	┝		
Sweet Gale Shrub Fen Type	FES1-1	×		
Fen Birch Shrub Fen Type	FES1-2 X	×	- Fen Birch (Betula pumila)	
Shrubby Cinquefoil Shrub Fen Type	FES1-3	×		
Leatherleaf - Forb Shrub Fen Type	FES1-4	×		
Velvet-leaf Blueberry Shrub Fen Type	FES1-5 X	×		
Mountain Holly Shrub Fen Type	FES1-6 X	×		
Chokeberry Shrub Fen Type	FES1-7 X	×		
Highbush Blueberry-Leatherleaf-Chokeberry Shrub Fen Type	FES1-8 X X	×		
Low White Cedar Shrub Fen Type	FES1-9	×		
Treed Fen	FET		- 10% < tree cover s 25%	
Treed Fen Ecosite	FET1	\vdash		
Tamarack Treed Fen Type	FET1-1	×		
Tamarack – White Cedar Treed Fen Type	FFT1-2 X	×		

Den Bog Pope Boot	Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E7E	E Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
PD Gg - tree cover ≤ 10%; shrub cover ≤ 25% Sen Bog Ecosite BOO1 - tree cover ≤ 10%; shrub cover ≤ 25% w-seeded Sedge Open Bog Type BOO1-1 X - tree cover ≤ 10%; shrub cover ≥ 25% ub Bog BOO1-2 X - tree cover ≤ 10%; shrub cover > 25% ub Bog BOO1-2 X - tree cover ≤ 10%; shrub cover > 25% ub Bog Ecosite BOS2 - continuous Sphagnum spp cover atherleaf Shrub Rettle Bog Type BOS2-1 X X atherleaf Shrub Kettle Bog Type BOS2-1 X X ed Bog BOT1-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp. cover ed Bog BOT1-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp. cover ed Bog BOT1-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp. cover ed Bog Ecosite BOT1-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp. cover ed Bog Ecosite BOT1-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp. cover ed Bog Ecosite BOT1-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp. cover ed Bog Ecosite BOT1-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp. cover			- tree cover (trees > 2m high) < 25%	- substrate organic; > 40 cm of Sphagnum
site BOO1 - ground cover s 10%; shrub cover s 25% ge Open Bog Type BOO1-1 X - ground cover dominated by Sphagnum en Bog Type BOO1-2 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover site BOS1 - continuous Sphagnum spp cover b Bog Type BOS1-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover b Kettle Bog Type BOS2-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover arry Shrub Kettle Bog Type BOT2-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover BOT1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover BOT1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover BOT2 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover BOT1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover BOT2-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover BOT2-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover BOT2-1 X - continuous Sphagnum spp cover	Bog	Q		peat, rarely flooded; always saturated - pH, is moderate to highly acidic (< 4,2) - ombrotrophic peatland
site BOO1 - ground cover dominated by Sphagnum Ige Open Bog Type BOO1-1 X en Bog Type BOO1-2 X b Bog Type BOS1-1 X b Bog Type BOS1-1 X b Bog Type BOS2-1 X b Kettle Bog Type BOS2-1 X b Kettle Bog Type BOS2-2 X b Kettle Bog Type BOT2-1 X b Kettle Bog Type BOT1 10% < tree cover \$ 25%	Open Bod	B0 0	- tree cover < 10%; shrub cover < 25%	
BOO1-1 X BOO1-2 X BOO1-2 X	Open Bog Ecosite	B001	ground cover dominated by Sphagnum spp. and sedges (e.g., Carex ofgosperma)	
BOO1-2 X Shirth BOO1-2 Shirth BOO1-2 Shirth BOO5 Continuous Sphagnum spp cover Shirth BOO5 Continuous Sphagnum spp cover BOO7 Continuous Sphagnum spp cover Continuous Sphagnum spp	Few-seeded Sedge Open Bog Type	B001-1 X		
BOS -tree cover ≤ 10%, shrub cover > 25%	Cotton-grass Open Bog Type	B001-2 X		
b Bog Type BOS1-1 X b Bog Type BOS2-1 X b Kettle Bog Type BOS2-1 X arry Shrub Kettle Bog Type BOS2-2 X BOT continuous Sphagnum spp. cover sed BOT1-1 X BOT BOT1-1 X and Ecosite BOT2-1 X BOT2-1 X BOT2-1 X BOT2-1 X BOT2-1 X BOT2-1 X BOT2-1 X	Shrub Bog	BOS	- tree cover < 10%; shrub cover > 25% - continuous Sphagnum spp cover	
bb Bog Type BOS2-1 X og Ecosite BOS2-1 X bb Kettle Bog Type BOS2-2 X erry Shrub Kettle Bog Type BOS2-2 X BOT	Shrub Bog Ecosite	BOS1		
og Ecosite BOS2-1 X be Kettle Bog Type BOS2-1 X erry Shrub Kettle Bog Type BOS2-2 X BOT -:00thrubus Sphagnum spp. cover safte BOT1-1 X og Ecosite BOT2-1 X therleaf Treed Kettle Bog Type BOT2-1 X	Leatherleaf Shrub Bog Type	BOS1-1 X		
the Kettle Bog Type BOS2-2 X BOS2-2 X BOT	Shrub Kettle Bog Ecosite	BOS2		
BOS2-2 X -10% < tree cover ≤ 25% BOT -continuous Sphagnum spp. cover Southern BOT1 Continuous Sphagnum spp. cover BOT1 Southern BOT1-1 X BOT2 Cover BOT2-1 X BOT2-1	Leatherleaf Shrub Kettle Bog Type	BOS2-1	×	
BOT -10% < rite cover ≤ 25% Solid	Highbush Blueberry Shrub Kettle Bog Type			
salte BOT1 eed Bog Type BOT1-1 X og Ecosite BOT2 therleaf Treed Kettle Bog Type BOT2-1 X	Treed Bog	ВОТ	- 10% < tree cover < 25% - continuous Sphagnum spp. cover	
Sog Type BOT1-1 X Cosite BOT2 ast Treed Kettle Bog Type BOT2-1 X	Treed Bog Ecosite	BOT1		
BOT2 BOT2-1 X	Black Spruce Treed Bog Type	BOT1-1 X		
BOT2-1	Treed Kettle Bog Ecosite	BOT2		- found in kettle depressions
	Tamarack - Leatherleaf Treed Kettle Bog Type	BOT2-1	×	

44 Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E 7E		Environmental Characteristics	
Marsh	¥		- tree and shrub cover s 25% - dominated by emergent hydrophytic macrophytes	- variable flooding regimes - water depth < 2 m	
Meadow Marsh	MAM		- species less tolerant of prolonged flooding	• flooding seasonal – soils flooded in spring, most to dry by summer represents the wetland – terrestrial miterace	
Bedrock Meadow Marsh Ecosite	MAM1	_		 carbonate, basic or acidic bedrock 	_
Reed-canary Grass Bedrock Meadow Marsh Type MAM1-1		×			_
Red-top Bedrock Meadow Marsh Type	MAM1-2	×			_
Forb Bedrock Meadow Marsh Type	MAM1-3	×			_
Horsetail Bedrock Meadow Marsh Type	MAM1-4	×			,
Mineral Meadow Marsh Ecosite	MAM2		grasses or sedges usually dominant incher areas dominated by cloral species, wave cobbie) swept, (ce scoured areas are sparsely vegetated - exposed areas with shoreline energies and disturbance.)	 mineral substrates (e.g., sand, grave), cobbie) exposed areas with aboreline energies and disturbance 	
Buejoint Mineral Meadow Marsh Type	MAM2-1	×			
Reed-canary Grass Mineral Meadow Marsh Type	MAM2-2	×			
Red-top Mineral Meadow Marsh Type	MAM2-3	×			
Fow! Manna Grass Mineral Meadow Marsh Type	MAM2-4	×			_
Narrow-leaved Sedge Mineral Meadow Marsh	MAM2-5	×	MAM2-5 X X < 5 mm leaf width		i
Broad-leaved Sedge Mineral Meadow Marsh Type MAIM2-6	MAM2-6	×	X > 5 mm leaf width		
Horsetail Mineral Meadow Marsh Type	MAM2-7 X X	×			
Prairie Slough Grass Mineral Meadow Marsh Type MAM2-8		×			7-
Jeweiweed Mineral Meadow Marsh Type	MAM2-9 X X	×			r —
Forb Mineral Meadow Marsh Type	MAM2-10 X	×			ıı

45	Nestad ELC Community Units	Code	9 9	7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Marsh	r.	WA			- tree and shrub cover < 25% - dominated by emergent hydrophytic macrophytes	- variable flooding regimes - water depth < 2 m
Меа	Meadow Marsh	MAM			- species less tolerant of prolonged flooding - flooding seasonal – soits flooded in sping, most to dry by summer sping, most to dry by summer - represents the wetland – terrestrial interface	- flooding seasonal — soils flooded in spring, moist to dry by summer represents the wetland – terrestrial interface
Orga	Organic Meadow Marsh Ecosite	MAM3			- grasses and sedges usually dominant - rich areas dominated by clonal species	- organic substrates – Of, Om, Oh (O. 1985) - sheltered areae - shoreline energies disturbance low
Blue	Bluejoint Organic Meadow Marsh Type	MAM3-1	×	×		
Reed	Reed-canary Grass Organic Meadow Marsh Type	MAM3-2	×	×		
Rice	Rice Cut-grass Organic Meadow Marsh Type	MAM3-3	×	×		
Fow	Fow! Manna Grass Organic Meadow Marsh Type	MAM3-4	×	×		
Narro	Narrow-leaved Sedge Organic Meadow Marsh Type MAM3-5 X X < 5 mm leaf width	MAM3-5	×	×	< 5 mm leaf width	
Broa	Broad-leaved Sedge Organic Meadow Marsh Type	MAM3-6	×	×	X X > 5 mm leaf width	
Prain	Prairie Slough Grass Organic Meadow Marsh Type	MAM3-7	×	×		
Jewe	Jewelweed Organic Meadow Marsh Type	MAM3-8 X X	×	×		
Forb	Forb Organic Meadow Marsh Type	MAM3-9	×	×		

46 Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Marsh	WA W	<u> </u>	 tree and shrub cover s 25% dominated by emergent hydrophytic macrophytes 	- variable flooding regimes - water depth < 2 m
Meadow Marsh	MAM		- species less tolerant of prolonged flooding	- flooding seasonal – soils flooded in spring, moist to dry by summer represents the welland – terrestrial interface
Great Lakes Coastal Meadow Marsh Ecosite (synonym = Shoreline Fen or Panne)	MAM4		- rushes and reeds usually dominant - vegetation cover is typically short and spares (i.e., low above-ground and litter biomass) - high incidence of rare or uncommon species	
Graminoid Coastal Meadow Marsh Type	MAM4-1 X X	×		
Shrubby Cinquefoil Coastal Meadow Marsh Type	MAM4-2 X X	×		1 80
Mineral Fen Meadow Marsh Ecosite	MAM5		- rushes and reeds usually dominant - deep calcareo - vegetation cover is typically short and substrates or at sparse (i.e., low above-ground and litter limestone bedromenses - low nutrient ie	deep calcareous, sandy textured substrates or shallow substrates over limestone bedrock low nutrient levals minerotrophic
Mineral Fen Meadow Marsh Type	MAM5-1 X X	×		- mari, tufa or other calcareous substrates formed in seepage zones similar to Great Lakes Coastal Meadow Marsh, bur not restricted to the near-shore areas of the Great Lakes
Tallgrass Mineral Fen Meadow Marsh Type	MAM5-2	×	- dominated by fen and prairie grasses. Indian - organic substrate less developed (Toss. Little Blueselem. Big Bluestem. Tufted Hairgrass, Ruchadson's Muhly Grass. Sterile Sedge, Ohio Goldenrod.	r - organic substrate less developed
Tallgrass Meadow Marsh Ecosite	MAM6		prairie grasses dominant. Indian Grass, Little Bluestem, Big Bluestam wet prairies found associated with drier prairies	- occur on low-lying areas of glacial lakeplains - offen part of wetland or upland mosalc on dimpled or patterned landscapes
Bluejoint-Praine Slough Grass Taligrass Meadow Marsh Type	MAM6-1	×		

47 Nested ELC Community Units	Code 6E 7E	9	7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
Marsh	¥			 tree and strub cover ≤ 25% hydrophytic emergent mecrophyte cover ≥ 25% 	- variable flooding regimes - water depth < 2 m
Shallow Marsh	MAS				 water up to 2 m deep stending or flowing water for much or all of growing season veries from bare bedrock or parent mineral material to organic substrates
Bedrock Shallow Marsh Ecosite	MAS1	П	П		- carbonate, basic or acidic bedrock - on exposed, active shorelines
Mineral Shallow Marsh Ecosite	MAS2			- grasses, sedges and rushes usually dominant inydrophytic emargent macrophyte cover ≥ 25 %	- parent mineral substrates; sand, gravel, shingle or cobble - hypically on exposed, active or somewhat sheltered shonelines and depressions
Cattail Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-1 X X	×	×		
Bulrush Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-2 X X	×	×		
Narrow-leaved Sedge Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-3 X X	×	×	< 5 mm leaf width	
Broad-leaved Sedge Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-4 X X	×	×	> 5 mm leaf width	
Wild-rice Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-5 X X	×	×		
Three-square Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-6 X	×			
Bur-reed Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-7		×		
Rice Cut-grass Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-8		×		
Forb Mineral Shallow Marsh Type	MAS2-9 X X	×	×		

48 Nested ELC Community Units	Code	7		Environmental Characteristics
Marsh	MA		 tree and strub cover s 25% hydrophytic emergent macrophyte cover s 25% 	- variable flooding regimes - water depth < 2 m
Shallow Marsh	MAS			- water up to 2 m deep - standing or flowing welter for much or all of growing season - wates from bare befrock or parent mineral material to organic substrates
Organic Shallow Marsh Ecosite	MAS3		- grasses, sedges and rushes usually dominant - hydrophytic emergent mecrophyte cover > 25%	- organic substrates - Of, Om, Oh (OIP 1985) - sheltered areas; low shoreline energies and disturbance
Cattail Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-1	×		
Bulrush Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-2	×		
Narrow-leaved Sedge Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-3 X X	×	< 5 mm leaf width	
Broad-leaved Sedge Organic Shallow Marsh Type MAS3-4	MAS3-4	×	> 5 mm leaf width	
Wild-rice Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-5	×		
Spike Rush Organic Shailow Marsh Type	MAS3-6	×		
Bur-reed Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-7	×		
Rice Cut-grass Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-8	×		
Rush Grass Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-9	×	•	
Forb Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-10 X X	×		
Calla Líly Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-11 X X	×		
Water Willow Organic Shallow Marsh Type	MAS3-12 X X	×		

Aquatic Community Tables

Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E 7E		Environmental Characteristics
	o V		 no macrophyte vegetation; no tree or shrub cover plankton dominated 	- water > 2 m depth - lake trophic status
	OAO			
Nested ELC Community Units	Code	6E 7E	Vegetation Characteristics	Environmental Characteristics
	¥s		submerged or floating-leaved macrophylas - water up to 2 m depth - emergent vegetation may be present but standing valer alway never dominant energy; such an bree or shub cover.	 water up to 2 m depth standing water always present shoreline energy; substrate; nufrients
Submerged Shallow Aquatic	SAS		- dominated (>25%) by submerged macrophytes	
Submerged Shallow Aquatic Ecosite	SAS1	-		
Pondweed Submerged Shallow Aquatic Type	SAS1-1	×		
Waterweed Submerged Shallow Aquatic Type	SAS1-2	×		
Stonewort Submerged Shallow Aquatic Type	SAS1-3	×		
Water Milfoll Submerged Shallow Aquatic Type	SAS1-4	X;		
wild celery submerged snallow Aduatic Type	2421-5	⟨; ⟨;		
Water Mangold Submerged Shallow Aquatic Type	SAS1-6	Υ/ Υ>		
Silanow Addance ype	2000	4	on demonstrate of (2020) hadranise of	
Mixed Shallow Aquatic	SAM		 dorninated (>2.2.%) by a mixture or submerged end floating-leaved macrophytes 	
Mixed Shallow Aquatic Ecosite	SAM1			
Pickerel-weed Mixed Shallow Aquatic Type	SAM1-1	×		
Duckweed Mixed Shallow Aquatic Type	SAM1-2	×		
Watercress Mixed Shallow Aquatic Type	SAM1-3	×		
Pondweed Mixed Shallow Aquatic Type	SAM1-4	×		
Bur-reed Mixed Shallow Aquatic Type	SAM1-5	×		
Bladderwort Mixed Shallow Aquatic Type	SAM1-6	×		
Water Milfoil Mixed Shallow Aquatic Type	SAM1-7	×		
Floating-leaved Shallow Aquatic	SAF		- dominated (>25%) by floating-leaved macrophytes	
Floating-leaved Shallow Aquatic Ecosite	SAF1			
Water Lily - Bullhead Lily Floating-leaved Shallow Aquatic Type SAF1-1	SAF1-1	×		
American Lotus Floating-leaved Shallow Aquatic Type SAF1-2	SAF1-2	$\hat{}$		
Duckweed Floating-leaved Shallow Agriatic Type	SAF1-3	×		

5. ELC Photo Album

Beach / Bar

Wormwood Gravel Open Beach Type (BBO1-2) (Giant's Tomb Island Nature Reserve, Simcoe County; J.L. Riley)



Sand Dune

Open Sand Dune (SDO) and Shrub Sand Dune (SDS) (Sandbanks Provincial Park, Prince Edward County; J.L. Riley)



Bluff

Open Clay Bluff Type (BLO1-1) (Claybanks, Grey County; J.L. Riley)





Cliff

Cliffbrake—Lichen Carbonate Open Cliff Type (CLO1-1) (Hope Bay Nature Reserve, Bruce County; J.L. Riley)



- Talus

Carbonate Open Talus (TAO) and Carbonate Shrub Talus (TAS) (Cabot Head, Bruce County; P.S.G. Kor)



Alvar

Tufted Hairgrass—Canada Bluegrass Open Alvar Meadow Type (ALO1-4) (FON Bruce Alvar Nature Reserve, Bruce County; J.L. Riley)

Rock Barren

Oak-Red Maple-Pine Basic Treed Rock Barren Type (RBT-2-1) (Kaladar Jack Pine ANSI, Lennox and Addington County; W.D. Bakowsky)



Crevice and Cave

Moist Liverwort –Moss– Fern Carbonate Crevice Type (CCR1-1) (Mono Cliffs Provincial Park, Dufferin County; J.L. Riley)



Sand Barren

Open Sand Barren (SBO) and Treed Sand Barren (SBT) (Giant's Tomb Island Nature Reserve, Simcoe County; J.L. Riley)





Tallgrass Prairie, Savannah and Woodland

Fresh-Moist Tallgrass Prairie Type (TPO2-1) (Walpole Island First Nation, Essex County; J.L Riley)



Forest -Coniferous Forest

Dry Jack Pine Coniferous Forest Type (FOC1-1) (Brinkman's Corners, Bruce County; D. Kirk)



Forest - Mixed Forest

Fresh - Moist White Cedar - Hardwood Mixed Forest Type (FOM7-2) (Brown Hill, York RM; D. Bradley)

Forest Deciduous Forest Dry-Fresh Sugar Maple Deciduous Forest Type (FOD5-1) (Blue Mountain, Grey County; J.L. Riley)



Cultural
Cultural Coniferous
Plantation (CUP3) and
Mineral Cultural Meadow
(CUM1)
(Glen Major, Durham
RM; P. Savoie)



Swamp Coniferous
Swamp
White Cedar-Conifer
Organic Coniferous
Swamp Type (SWC3-2)
(Centre Dummer
Swamp, Peterborough
County; J.L. Riley)



Swamp Coniferous Swamp
Hemlock Mineral
Coniferous Swamp Type

Hemlock Mineral Coniferous Swamp Type (SWC2-2) (Thamesford Woodlot, Middlesex County; D. Bradley)

Note: vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage



Swamp - Mixed Swamp

White Cedar-Hardwood Mineral Mixed Swamp Type (SWM1-1) (The Big Swamp, Prince Edward County; J.L. Riley)



Swamp -Deciduous Swamp

Silver Maple Mineral Deciduous Swamp Type (SWD3-2) (Mohawk Park, City of Brantford, Brant County; W. Bakowsky)

Fen Bog Buckbean-Sedge Graminoid Open Fen Type (FEO1-4) (Emily River Fen, Victoria County; J.L. Riley)



Bog Cotton-grass Graminoid Open Bog Type (BOO1-2) (Luther Marsh, Dufferin County; J.L. Riley)



Marsh - Meadow Marsh Graminoid Coastal Meadow Marsh Type (MAM4-1) (Oliphant, Bruce County; J.L. Riley)



Marsh - Shallow Marsh Wild-rice Organic Shallow Marsh Type (MAS3-5) (West Caledon Lake, Peel RM; J.L. Riley)



Open Water
Open Aquatic (OAO)
(Wilmot Creek, Durham
RM; E. Thimm)



Shallow Water Water Lily Floatingleaved Shallow Aquatic Type (SAF1-1) (Point Pelee National Park, Essex County; J.L. Riley)



Part II: Application

Application of This Manual

The first part of this manual described the structure and community units of the Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario. The second part addresses the application of the ELC. In this part, the tools and techniques developed to facilitate the consistent description, classification and mapping of ecological land units are presented. Although they represent separate components, which can be used independently of each other, they have been developed to work in conjunction with each other and the ELC (Figure 6).

The tools and techniques presented here rely on the **polygon** as the basic unit for application. A polygon is a discrete and unique area outlined on a map or air-photo that contains more or less homogeneous environmental and vegetation characteristics.

The second part of this manual has the following components.

Part II.

Context

An overview of how the ELC could help address the current challenges facing natural resource planners and managers.

How to Apply the ELC

Proposes a process by which the components of this manual can be applied.

Description Framework

Eight fields are used to describe and document the environment and vegetation conditions of a polygon. The fields are as follows: System, Site, Substrate, Topographic Feature, History, Cover, Plant Form and Community.

Field Sampling Methods and Data Cards

Provides a consistent way to collect ELC information and other polygon characteristics. These methods show what needs to be sampled and the field data cards provided facilitate data input directly into a database.

A database has been developed to record and manage all the description- and classification-related data for polygons. This database has been made available on the internet at:

http://www.mnr.gov.on.ca/MNR/nhic/veg/lists/elc.html



6. Context for the ELC

103 —

Current Challenges

The planning and management of Southern Ontario's natural heritage are subject to incredible challenges. Continued economic growth and development place great demands and stress on a dwindling and fragmented natural landscape. However, the communities within the region are responding by developing approaches that recognize the connections among environment, economy and society. Long-standing and new partnerships involving agencies, municipalities, organizations and individuals from a variety of disciplines are involved in many projects dealing with natural heritage stewardship, planning, management and research (Riley and Mohr 1994). The ecosystem approach, which recognizes these inter-relationships, has become the new paradigm for planning within the region (Nixon and Whitelaw 1994; Puddister and Nelischer 1994).

An understanding of ecological patterns and processes is a fundamental first step in an ecosystem approach to planning and management. Some of the key issues and needs for managers and practitioners are:

- standards for the identification, description, classification and mapping of natural communities at different scales:
- criteria for the evaluation of natural features and areas,
- a framework for the identification of key ecological functions;
- protocols for baseline data collection and monitoring;
- improved consistency across and within areas of jurisdiction;
- a framework for standard data assembly and management.

The most significant weakness of previous inter-disciplinary approaches to such work has been the lack of systematic, and therefore replicable, methods for ecological integration (Bastedo and Theberge 1983). As a result, a critical requirement for agencies responsible for developing and implementing an ecosystem approach is a common framework in which to collect, organize, analyze and report on ecological information (Uhlig and Baker 1994; Riley and Mohr 1994; Brownell and Larson 1995).

The Ecological Land Classification and the tools and techniques for application have been arranging or ordering information about land units so we can better understand their similarities and relationships (Bailey 1996). The Ecological Land Classification for Southern Ontario provides a framework for consistent community description, classification, mapping and data collection The framework is based on an inventory of vegetation, community, soils and other site characteristics. Such information is essential if sound resource management decisions are to be made. The potential utility of ELC is considerable, ranging from broad regional or watershed scale studies, land-use planning, inventory, research and management (Table 9).

able 9. ELC Common So Unit	Scale	Applications
Community Class and Community Series	1:50,000 to 1:10,000	Watershed or subwatershed studies; official plans and landscape-level assessments
Ecosite	1:20,000 to 1:10,000	Subwatershed studies; secondary plans and community plans
Vegetation Type	1:10,000 to 1:2,000	Site-level planning; environmental impact assessments; subdivisions; land stewardship; community rankings and recovery plans

Ecological Land-Use Planning

From an administrative and policy perspective, land-use planning in Ontario has undergone a major evolution over the last five years. The most important change has been the approval by the province of the new 1997 Provincial Policy Statement (PPS)(Province of Ontario 1997). Greater responsibility for land-use planning decisions is now placed at the local or municipal level. Policy 2.3 of the PPS provides for the protection of "natural heritage features and areas", and it creates the need for municipalities to describe and evaluate them, in order to understand their ecological functions and their "significance". Municipalities and their partners, therefore, face challenges in synthesizing complex biotic and abiotic relationships into forms that are useful within a land-use planning context.

The ELC is an effective tool to address these needs at a regional, local or site level. It provides a uniform and consistent approach to ecosystem description and classification. It facilitates evaluation of communities and it presents a framework for consistent data collection, assembly and management across municipalities, regions and watersheds. In addition, while the PPS and its supporting reference manuals suggest a number of minimum standards (MNR 1998), municipalities may wish to develop additional approaches with the ELC to ensure ecologically sound management of their remaining natural areas, from landscape to site scales.

Park Planning

Protecting the ecological integrity of natural heritage areas is the basis upon which most park or conservation area planning decisions should be made (see Poser et al. 1993). If a park is created or managed for the protection of species, considerable focus must be placed on habitat. As Hummel (1995) indicated, "if we don't conserve the underlying ecological processes and larger natural systems upon which species depend, we will simply be fiddling."

Ecological community classification can help ensure adequate representation of natural areas and habitats within a park system. It has also proven effective in identifying priority sites for conservation or acquisition (Jalava and Godschalk 1998). As part of the park or area planning exercise, consistent description and mapping of community types will facilitate an analysis of constraints and opportunities. The detailed field data, combined with community mapping, can also provide a framework for monitoring change within the conservation area or park boundaries.

Forest Management

Current forest management planning must address the issue of diversity from the community and ecosystem level rather than the species-by-species approach (Harris 1984). At the Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels, the ELC facilitates an ecosystem-based approach to the management of standardized silvicultural units within Site Regions 6E and 7E (Hills 1966) or Forest Regions (Great Lakes-St. Lawrence and Carolinian Forest Regions, Rowe 1972). In the near future, silvicultural guides will incorporate ELC units as an integral part of forest management (OMNR in prep)

The ELC enables data collection for basal area calculations. In addition, information on vegetative structure and composition, disturbance levels and wildlife is also gathered using the process recommended through the ELC. Therefore, the ELC provides a framework for the collection and analysis of traditional data sets required for silvicultural prescriptions. It also enables a more holistic, community-based analysis of the timber potential of a particular unit.

Private Land Stewardship

With more than 90% of the land base in Southern Ontario privately owned (Riley and Mohr 1994), landowners play a significant role in the protection, management and restoration of natural communities and wildlife habitat. A variety of stewardship programs have shown that education of landowners on the ecological values of their property improves upon conservation efforts (Hilts and Moull 1990). Application of the ELC standards will provide landowners with a wealth of information on their lands and a sound scientific basis for management decisions. Standardized community descriptions will facilitate communication between resource professionals and private landowners. Greater efficiencies will also be possible through stewardship guidelines or recommendations based on standard Ecosite or Vegetation Types and supporting Community Factsheets (Lee in prep.), rather than individual prescriptions.

Restoring Biodiversity

Many areas in Southern Ontario have less than 5% woodland and less than 10 or 15% cover by any native ecosystems. In addition, more than 50 species of plants and animals are thought to have been extirpated from Southern Ontario since European colonization, 40 of them plants (Riley and Mohr 1994). A variety of efforts are underway by individuals, groups and agencies to begin the process of restoring lost or degraded natural communities and species (Daigle and Havinga 1996; Waterfront Regeneration Trust 1995; Hough Stansbury et al. 1994).

The classification and the supporting Catalogue of Documented Community Descriptions (Bakowsky et al. in prep.) can serve as a bench-mark for some of the proposed restoration initiatives. The ELC may also benefit the development and implementation of recovery plans for individual species by assisting agencies in locating existing suitable habitat types.

Research

Our knowledge of community composition and function and species—habitat relationships continues to increase through research conducted by universities, resource management agencies and other individuals and groups. The ELC provides a common language of communication among researchers for sharing their findings. When researchers use this manual for community description, mapping and classification, the ELC itself will be improved and refined as research results are published. In addition, the Community Tables within the manual provide a form of gap analysis. The lack of information on vegetation and environmental characteristics for certain community types (e.g., Cultural Series) should provide a focus for future research efforts.

7. How to Apply the ELC

Process of Application

Whether the goal is planning (e.g., an official plan or a development proposal) or a life science inventory, the tools and techniques presented in this manual can be applied the same way. Figure 6 shows how these tools and techniques can be applied at both the landscape- and site-level scales of resolution. Table 10 gives further details on how to carry out the required tasks at the desired scale.

Landscape Scale

Application at the landscape scale, using only air-photo or satellite imagery interpretation, is coarse. At this coarse scale of resolution, polygons can only be described, classified and mapped to the Community Class and Community Series levels in the ELC (e.g., Deciduous Swamp, Open Cliff or Coniferous Forest). This level of application gives coarse-level ELCbased inventory on a regional, municipal, watershed or subwatershed scale, upon which official plans or watershed plans can be developed.

Site Scale

Application at the site scale requires field work. At this scale of resolution, it is necessary to collect the detailed site, soil and vegetation data that are used to describe, classify and map polygons to the Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels in the ELC (e.g., Bur Oak Deciduous Mineral Swamp Type, Cliffbrake - Lichen Carbonate Open Cliff Type, Fresh - Moist Hemlock Coniferous Forest Type). This detailed application level provides the information needed for site-level environmental impact assessments, evaluations, forest management, detailed life science inventories, restoration, land stewardship and development proposals, to name a few. Furthermore, important management, disturbance and wildlife information can be collected for other land-use purposes.

Combined Approach

The challenge is that most resource managers and planners need to operate at both levels of scale. The tools and techniques presented here represent an integrated model approach for inventory and information management suitable for meeting these various scale and resolution needs.

In the short term, the landscape level of application provides the necessary coarse-level products for resource management and planning. This establishes the consistent framework by which more detailed site-level information can be accumulated, as sites are visited over the long term. When using the ELC Database, this detailed site-level information simply appends the existing landscape-level records for any particular polygon. Figure 6 shows how all the data and information collected are channeled into a centralized database. Having consistent polygon descriptions and classifications for polygons, therefore, increases the search and query capabilities within this one database.

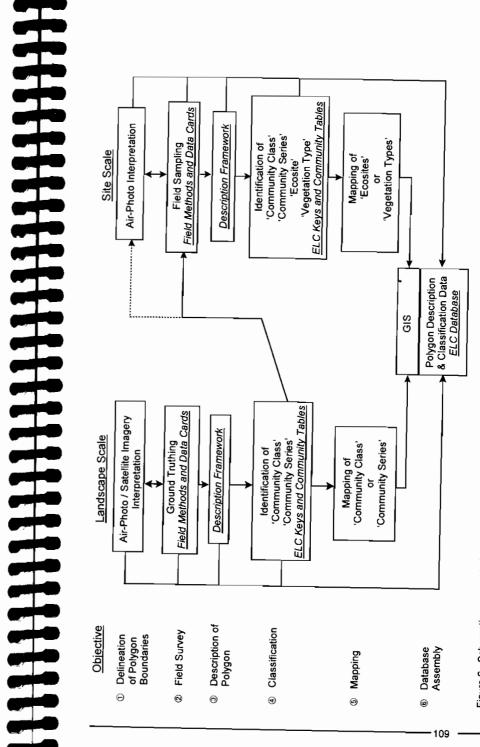


Figure 6. Schematic representation of how the *tools and techniqu*es in this manual are applied at different scales of resolution (refer to Table 10 for details).

اہ	
g	
킮	
<u>=</u>	
Š	
딠	
씱	
ွု	
Ĕ[
띪	
릵	
힔	
lg	
의	
曺	
au	
티	
휥	
.⊑	
S	
뎡	
Ē	
tec	
g	
Say	
ly the tools and techniques in this manual to accomplish the Objectives in Figure o.	
e	
ŧ	
ρĮ	
ab	
5	
Fable 10. How to apply the tools ar	
I	
10	
e	
岩	

i		The state of the s	
	Objective	Landscape Scale	Site Scale
Θ	Delineation of Polygon Boundaries	 use landform, slope position, hydrological drainage pattern and vegetation form and cover to interpret and delineate polygon boundaries. interpretation and delineation of polygon boundaries, at the landscape scale of resolution, is flexible. Jall ecological boundaries can be interpreted and delineated — these polygons will typically represent the more detailed Ecosite and vegetation Type levels in the ELC, or 2) only the more generalized Community Series-level boundaries are interpreted. use additional sources of information to help interpretation – refer to the Case Studies section in this manual and Amup and Racey (1996) for further details on interpretation of airphotos 	- use landform, slope position, hydrological drainage pattern and vegetation form and cover to interpret and delineate polygon boundaries. Interpret and delineate all ecological boundaries. If interpret and delineate all ecological boundaries. If interpretation at the landscape level is only taken to the ELC Community Series level, then go back to the air-photos to reinterpret for the finest resolution of ecological land units (this will, more often than not, represent an Ecosite) - use additional sources of information to help interpretation - refer to the Case Studies section in this manual and Arrup and Racey (1996) for further details on interpretation of air-photos
0	Field Survey	- select a small set of interpreted polygons, representing a range of site and vegetation conditions - visit the polygon and use the ELC Field Sampling Methods and Data Cards to collect the necessary data to describe and classify the polygon according to the ELC - test and refine the interpretation of polygons done in ①	 conduct field surveys for polygons identified for planning purposes (e.g., a development proposal) or for more systematic purposes (e.g., inventory) collect detailed site and vegetation data for each polygon using the ELC Field Sampling Methods and Data Cards
0	Description of Polygon	use the eight fields in the ELC Description Framework to describe the environmental, historical and vegetation conditions found within the polygon assigning conditions to History and Plant Form may not be possible at this scale of resolution. use other sources of information to help assign conditions for Site, Substrate and Topographic Features.	 use the eight fields in the ELC Description Framework to describe the environmental, historical and vegetation conditions found within the polygon assign conditions to all eight fields; other sources of information may be necessary

	l
the Objectives in Figure 6.	
I to accomplish	
is manual to	
hniques in th	
tools and tec	
o apply the	
led. How t	1
10 continu	
출	ŀ

	Objective	. Landscape Scale	Site Scale
⊕	Glassification	 use the information and data documented in ① ② and ③ to classify the polygon to the Community Class and Community Series levels in the ELC use the ELC Keys and Community Tables to assign ELC units to the polygon Note: only Community Class and Community Series level classifications can be achieved without a field visit and sampling of the polygon 	 use the information about the polygon, documented in the field in ® and ®, to classify the polygon to the Community Class. Community Series, Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels in the ELC use the ELC Keys and Community Tables to assign ELC units to the polygon hote only by using field data can a polygon be classified according to all the levels in the ELC
<u></u>	Mapping	 polygon boundaries and their corresponding classifications can be mapped by 1) manually transcribing the boundaries to hard-copy maps; or 2) digitization into Geographical Information Systems (GIS) for digital mapping mapping is to the Community Class or Community Series level in the ELC 	 polygon boundaries and their corresponding classifications can be mapped by. 1) manually transcribing the boundaries to hard cover maps; or 2) digitization into Geographical Information Systems (GIS) for digital mapping mapping can be done to the Community Class, Community Series. Ecosite or Vegetation Type level in the ELC
		 the spatial relationship, boundaries and unique identifiers for each polygon are stored in a GIS database resolution is to the Community Class and Community Series. resolution is to the ELC Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels in the ELC 	 the spatial relationship, boundaries and unique identifiers for each polygon are stored in a GIS database resolution is to the Community Class, Community Senes, Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels in the ELC
	Database Assembly and Data Management	 the description and classification information is entered into and managed by a database the ELC Database has been designed to accommodate all the information documented for the polygon, here, only the coarse-level landscape scale information is stored and managed the database has search and query capabilities 	 the description and classification information is entered into and managed by a database the ELC Database has been designed to accommodate all the information documented for the polygon, here, the detailed site scale information is stored and managed the database has search and query capabilities



8. Description Framework

Description Framework

The Description Framework presented here represents a formal and consistent way to describe the specific environmental, historical and vegetation characteristics of a polygon.

Since a particular community can occur on a range of different site conditions, it is necessary to describe the various conditions observed for each community. The specific attributes recorded to describe a particular polygon are then used to identify and classify the polygon according to the ELC.

One of the challenges faced in collating existing community descriptions (see Part 1, Background) was that the survey work had been done according to different standards, depending on who or which program did the survey. It is difficult to establish patterns when similar site or vegetation conditions are described and named differently. It is also difficult to analyze, sort or query data if the data are inconsistently documented. Such considerations are especially important when you want to integrate information and create centralized databases to manage natural heritage information. Having a description framework will, therefore, improve the ability of resource management and planning partners to collect, organize, analyze and manage ecological information consistently.

How to Apply Description Framework

The Description Framework (Table 11) employs a series of eight fields to define and describe a polygon. In each field, a series of attributes is presented. The first four fields [System, Site, Substrate and Topographic Feature] describe environmental (abiotic) aspects of the polygon. The fifth field [History] discriminates Cultural from Natural units and the remaining three fields [Cover, Plant Form and Community] describe aspects of the vegetation or community.

To begin assigning attributes to these description fields, some basic information on the polygon is required. Some of the information can be derived from maps, air photo interpretation and knowledge of the region, while other data may require field reconnaissance or more detailed knowledge of the site.

Any polygon may be described by choosing the one attribute in each field that best describes the conditions of the polygon. Use the Word Keys in this section to assign the specific attributes to each of the description fields. This description data can then be entered into the ELC Database by selecting the appropriate attribute on the pull-down menus for each of the description fields. Furthermore, the Diagrammatic Keys can be used to direct the practitioner to the appropriate ELC Community Table for further classification of a polygon.

For example, two Sugar Maple stands might be described, according to this Description Framework, as follows:

- A. Terrestrial Surficial Deposits Mineral Soil Bottomland Natural Treed Deciduous Forest
- B. Terrestrial Bedrock Carbonate Bedrock Tableland Natural Treed Deciduous Forest.

(See Table 12 for the demonstration of this example; bold type above represents those conditions that would vary, though the units can be classified as the same ELC unit.)

Similarly, two open grasslands might be described as:

- A. Terrestrial Surficial Deposits Mineral Soil Tableland Natural Open Graminoid Prairie
- B. Terrestrial Surficial Deposits Mineral Soil Tableland Cultural Open Graminoid – Meadow.

conditions ELC Polygon Description Framework, along with their associated defined range of up the eight fields that make

System	Site	Substrate	Topographic Feature	History	Cover	Plant Form	Community
Terrestrial	Open Water	Organic	Lacustrine	Natural	Open	Plankton	Lake
Wetland	Shallow Water	Mineral Soil	Riverine	Cultural	Shrub	Submerged	Pond
Aquatic	Surficial Deposits	Parent Mineral Material	Bottomland		Treed	Floating-leaved	River
	Bedrock	Carbonate Bedrock	Terrace			Graminoid	Stream
		Basic Bedrock	Valley Slope			Forb	Marsh
		Acidic Bedrock	Tableland			Lichen	Swamp
			Rolling Upland			Bryophyte	Fen
			Citie			Decidnous	Bog
			Talus			Coniferous	Barren
			Crevice / Cave			Mixed	Meadow
			Alvar				Prairie
			Rockland				Thicket
			Beach / Bar				Savannah
			Sand Dune				Woodland
			Bluff				Forest

Table 12. A demonstration of how to assign conditions to a polygon using the Description Framework. The two examples here show how conditions are assigned (dark shading) to the description fields. They also demonstrate how descriptions for different Sugar Maple forests could vary, in spite of assigning them the same classification according to the ELC.

A							
System	Sitte	Substrate	Topographic Feature	History	Cover	Plant Form	Community
Terrestrial	Open Water	Organic	Lacustone	Natural	Open	Piankton	Lake
Wetland	Shallow Water	Mineral Soil	Rivenne	Cultural	Shrub	Submerged	Pond
Aquatic	Surficial Deposits	Parent Mineral	Bottomland		Treed	Floating-leaved	River
	Bedrock	Carbonate Bedrock	Тепасе			Graminoid	Stream
		Basic Bedrock	Vailey Slope			Forb	Marsh
		Acidic Bedrock	Tableland			Lichen	Swamp
			Rolling Upland			Bryophyte	Fen
			Cliff			Deciduous	Bog
			Talus			Coniferous	Вапеп
			Crevice / Cave			Mixed	Meadow
			Alvar				Praine
			Rockland				Thicket
			Beach / Bar				Savanneh
			Sand Dune				Woodland
			Bluff				Forest
							Plantation

В							
System	Site	Substrate	Topographic Feature	History	Cover	Plant Form	Community
Terrestoal	Open Water	Organic	Lacustone	Natural	Open	Plankton	Lake
Wetland	Shallow Water	Mineral Soil	Riyenne	Cultural	Shrub	Submerged	Pond
Aquatic	Surficial Deposits	Parent Mineral	Bottomiand		Treed	Floating-leaved	River
	Bedrock	Carbonate Bedrock	Тептасе			Gramınoid	Stream
		Basic Bedrock	Valley Slope			Forb	Marsh
		Acidic Bedrock	Tableland			Lichen	Şwamp
			Rolling Upland			Bryophyte	Fen
			Cliff			Deciduous	Bog
			Talus			Coniferous	Barren
			Crevice / Cave]		Mixed	Meadow
			Alvar]			Praine
			Rockland				Thicket
			Beach / Bar				Savannah
			Sand Dune				Woodland
			Bluff				Forest

Word Keys for Description Framework

The Word Keys provide definitions of the attributes in each of the ELC description fields. They represent an ordered series of statements that leads to the discrimination of one attribute from another, based on specific criteria. At each level of the Word Key (numbers), two or three statements are presented (letters), representing distinct conditions. Decisions are made by selecting the statement that best represents the conditions of a polygon. Numbers in the right margin provide direction (i.e., go to) to the next set of appropriate statements.

System

1a. Water table rarely or briefly above the substrate surface; substrate of parent mineral material, mineral soil or bedrock; depth of accumulated organics < 40 cm; standing</p>

	pools of water or vernal pooling ≤ 20% of ground coverage; wetland plant species cover ≤ 50% of total plant species cover; mean wetness of a site for native species > 0¹; moisture regime typically < 5 (OIP 1985)
	w
1b.	. Water table seasonally or permanently at or above the substrate surface; flooded bedrock or hydric mineral or organic (organics > 40 cm) substrates; standing water, pools or vernal pooling > 20% of ground coverage; wetland plant species¹ cover > 50% of total plant species cover; mean wetness of a site for native species ≤ 0¹; moisture regime ≥5 (OIP 1985)
	2a. Eluctuating water levels: sites with shallow water, seasonal flooding with

summer drawdown, permanently saturated from high water table or seepage, or organic terrain (e.g., basins, depressions, adjacent low slopes, areas with restricted drainage, drainways, floodplains and littoral zones); water depth < 2 m; emergent herbaceous or woody vegetation cover > 25% Wetland System

Plantation

¹Wetland plant species refers to those species with Wetness Index scores of -5 or -4, see Table 8; refer to Oldham et al. (1995) or the ELC Database for a list of species and their Wetness Index or for the calculation of mean wetness for a site.

Site

1a. Aq	uatic or	wetland sites controlled by permanent standing or running water2
		r terrestrial sites where the water table normally drops below the substrate r at least part of the year; vegetation various
2a.	domina	c sites with deep water (usually > 2 m) in lakes, ponds or rivers; community ated by plankton; vascular vegetation cover ≤ 25%
		·
2b.	m); ve	c or wetland sites with more or less permanent shallow water (usually < 2 getation cover typically > 25%, except in active or disturbed sites
	3a.	Sites on deep (>15 cm) deposits of unconsolidated organic or mineral material
		Surficial Deposits
	3b.	Bedrock-controlled topography; typically a mosaic of exposed bedrock surfaces with variable accumulations of unconsolidated mineral substrates; substrates patchy and very shallow; average substrate depth ≤ 15 cm over bedrock
		Substrate
		Substrate
1a. Sit	es on d	eep (> 15 cm) deposits of unconsolidated organic or mineral material 2
var	riable a	ontrolled topography; typically a mosaic of exposed bedrock surfaces with occumulations of unconsolidated mineral substrates; substrates patchy and ow; average substrate depth ≤ 15 cm over bedrock
2a.	substr	rate of organic deposits of peat or muck > 40 cm deep; Of, Om, Oh ates (OIP 1985)
		Organic
2b.	. Substr shallov	rate mineral, with or without the incorporation of organic material, or with w (20 - 40 cm) peaty phase organic deposits
	3a.	Communities on unconsolidated parent mineral material; substrate with little or no alteration as a result of soil formation processes; no obvious development of soil horizons
		Parent Mineral Material
	3b.	Communities on unconsolidated mineral soil; substrates in which there is clear evidence of soil formation or development of soil horizons to at least 15 cm
4a.	. Igneus	bedrock containing > 66% silica; low pH Acidic Bedrock
		bedrock containing ≤ 66% silica, circumneutral pH Basic Bedrock
4c.		entary bedrock composed largely of carbonate minerals - fizzes on
		ure to acid; high pH
		Carbonate Bedrock

Topographic Feature

1a. Aquatic	or wetland site associated with the waters of a lake or pond Lacustrin
1b. Aquatic o stream	or wetland site associated with the waters of a river or
1c. Wetland	or terrestrial site not associated with the waters of a lake or river
2a. Site a	associated with bedrock-controlled topography
2b. Site	on unconsolidated mineral substrates
3 a .	Wetland or terrestrial site associated with the active shoreline of a lake or river, or in a clearly incised river valley
3b.	Wetland or terrestrial site not restricted to or associated with an active shoreline or river valley
4a.	Site on a more or less level plain, not associated with any marked topographic feature
4 b.	slopes and hollows
	Rolling Upland
5a. Comr bedro	nunities found on flat to rolling, knob and hollow or block reef and fissure ck-controlled topography; patchy soil accumulation
5b. Comm surfac	nunities found on enclosed or exposed steep or near-vertical bare bedrock ces and associated rock rubble
6 a .	Site on, or near the rim of, a steep or vertical exposed rock face > 3 m high
6b.	Site on fragmented rock or boulders accumulated at the base of a cliff
6c.	-
OC.	Deep, very shaded cavities and crevices in bedrock Crevice / Cave
7 a .	Site on more or less level expanses of limestone with a patchy exposure of exposed limestone pavement and a pattern of cracks or grykes; seasonal inundation of water and extreme summer drought
7b.	Block and fissure or rolling, knob and hollow bedrock; variable and extreme bedrock environments; patchy mosaic of bare rock surfaces and shallow substrate accumulations
8a. Site as	ssociated with the shoreline of a lake or river
8b. Site in	a clearly incised river valley
9a.	Site on the slopes of an incised river valley
	Valley Slope
9b.	Site in a river valley on more or less level ground associated with old or current meander terraces or floodplains

10a.	Site on level or near level substrate above the reach of modern flood waters; typically represents historical shorelines or floodplains Terrace							
10b.	Site at the base of a river valley subject to periodic flooding and deposition							
	11a. Active, often rolling, hills of accumulated sand; above the normal reach of waves and subject to erosion and deposition by wind (i.e., aeolian processes)							
	Near shore areas with steep to vertical exposures of unconsolidated mineral material > 2 m high; subjected to active disturbance from slumping, mass wasting and toe erosion							
	11c. Shoreline areas with high levels of disturbance; restricted to areas near water level and most subjected to active shoreline processes – periodic high water levels and storm events, wave action, erosion, deposition and ice scour Beach / Bar							
History								
	reated and maintained as a result of anthropogenic influences or cultural ventive species often abundant							
as a result sufficient in of the site,	y resulting from natural dynamics of vegetation development; not maintained of anthropogenic disturbance regimes; anthropogenic influences either not of tensity to have significantly altered the fundamental structure and composition or long enough ago that the community has recovered some of its original n and structure							

Cover

Naturai

1 a.	. Community with tree cover > 25%; trees > 2m tall	Treed
1b.	. Community with tree cover ≤ 25%	2
	2a. Shrub cover > 25%	Shrub
	2b. Shrub cover < 25%	Open

Plant Form

1a. Plant com	munity composed of free-floating microscopic organisms Plankto
1b. Plant com	nmunity dominated by at least some vascular plants
2a. Aquat	ic community dominated by submergent or floating-leaved plants
2b. Wetla vegeta	nd or terrestrial community dominated by emergent herbaceous or woody
3a.	Aquatic community with > 75% of the total vegetation cover composed of submergent species
3b.	Aquatic community with > 75% of the vegetation cover composed of species with leaves floating on the surface of the water Floating-leave
3c.	Aquatic community with floating-leaved and submergent plant cover each > 25 %
4a. Comm	unity dominated by woody species, tree or shrub cover > 25%
4b. Comm	unity dominated by herbaceous species; tree and shrub cover \leq 25%
5a.	Community with > 75% of the vegetation cover composed of non-vascular plants; bryophytes or lichens
5b.	Community with > 25% of the vegetation cover composed of vascular plants
6 a .	Community with > 75% of the vegetation cover composed of grasses, sedges, rushes or other narrow-leaved, grass-like, non-woody plants Graminoid
6b.	Community with > 75% of the vegetation cover composed of broad- leaved species, either monocots or dicots Forb
6c.	Community with graminoid and forb vegetation cover each > 25% Mixed
7a.	Community with > 50% of the vegetation cover composed of bryophytes; mosses or liverworts
7b.	Community with > 50% of the vegetation composed of lichens
8a. Decidud	ous tree or shrub species > 75% of canopy cover
	Deciduous
8b. Conifer	ous tree or shrub species > 75% of canopy cover Coniferous
8c. Both de	ciduous and coniferous tree or shrub species > 25% of capony cover.

Community

1a. Aquatic community
1b. Wetland community
1c. Terrestrial community
2a. Aquatic site in standing water body of a lake or pond
2b. Aquatic site in flowing water course of a river or stream
3a. Water body large, usually > 2 ha, subject to wave actionLake
3b. Water body smaller, ≤ 2 ha, usually too small for wave build-up
4a. Water course large, 4th order stream or greater River
4b. Water course smaller, 3 rd order stream or smaller Stream
5a. Wetland community with > 25% tree canopy cover Swamp
5b. Wetland community with ≤ 25% tree canopy cover; dominated by shrubs or non-woody species
6a. Community on mineral substrates or on sedge peat or muck organic substrates
6b. Substrate of deep (> 40 cm) Sphagnum peat; large mats or hummocks of Sphagnum mosses evident in the ground layer; water source ombrotrophic; acidic conditions prevail Bog
6c. Substrate of brown moss peat or marl; water source minerotrophic, alkaline to mildly acidic
7a. Shrub cover < 25%; vegetation dominated by emergent herbaceous species (macrophytes) Marsh
7b. Shrub cover > 25%; vegetation dominated by continuous or patchy shrub cover, with variable cover of emergent herbaceous species (macrophytes)
Thicket
8a. Community with > 25% tree cover
8b. Community with ≤ 25% tree cover; dominated by shrubs or non-woody species
9a. Tree cover > 60%
9b. 35% < tree cover ≤ 60%
9c. 25% < tree cover s 35%
10a. Trees planted
10b. Trees not planted, originating from natural regeneration Forest

11b. Shr 12a.	ub cover ≤ 25%; community dominated by non-woody species. Open community dominated by low shrubs; vegetation cover
128.	patchy and open; substrate surface a mosaic of exposed bare substrate and vegetation cover; woody vegetation shows stunted growth characteristics
12b.	Open community dominated by shrubs; shrubs typically > 2m high; vegetation cover relatively continuous and closed
13a	 Open community dominated by herbaceous vegetation; vegetation cover patchy and open; substrate surface a mosaic of exposed bare substrate and vegetation cover; woody vegetation shows stunted growth characteristics
13b	. Open communities dominated by herbaceous graminoid or forb species; vegetation cover relatively continuous and closed
	14a. Tallgrass species present (i.e., Indian Grass, Little Bluestem, Big Bluestem)
	14b. Tallgrass species absent

Diagrammatic Keys Linking the ELC Description and Classification Frameworks

The Diagrammatic Keys presented here use the Description Framework attributes to lead to the classification of the polygon. Different branches of the Diagrammatic Keys are followed, based on the attributes assigned to the polygon for each description field. Use the appropriate Word Key to make decisions, where necessary, for each Description Framework field. Decisions do not have to be made for every field. The appropriate branches in the diagrams lead to the ELC community unit found under such conditions. The ELC community unit arrived at will be at the Community Series level in the ELC framework. Table numbers on the right-hand side of each terminal branch lead to the appropriate table in the ELC Community Tables section. Once at the appropriate ELC Community Table, use the Vegetation and Environmental Characteristics columns to further classify the community to the Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels in the ELC.

These Diagrammatic Keys are presented here, separate from the ELC Keys (in Part I of this manual), because they are based soley upon the Description Framework attributes. These separate keys should be considered complimentary, rather than exclusive of one and other, and should be used in conjunction.

Note:

Description attributes separated by a slash (/) mean that either attribute may be true for the polygon.

Default branches in the diagrams are unlabeled and do not require decisions for the classification of the polygon.

For this first approximation of the ELC, the Cultural or anthropogenic communities have not been fully addressed. That is, how these culturally based units are defined, differentiated and classified has not been entirely worked out yet. For this edition of the ELC, we have accommodated the cultural units by providing a means to describe them, using the Description Framework. Furthermore, a set of generalized cultural units has been included in the ELC Community Tables (Tables 29 and 30). When such a unit is encountered, use the Description Framework to describe it, then follow the Diagrammatic Keys to lead to the ELC Community Tables. If the unit is not found in the Tables, apply an appropriate name that includes the community type designation. For example, a limestone quarry could be classified as a Cultural Open Carbonate Cliff Ecosite.

Go to Figure.	•	თ		9		<u> </u>	12	13		41	14	15		15
Topographic Feature				Cliff / Talus / Crevice / Cave		Rockland / Alver / Beach / Bar								
Substrate Mineral Soil		Parent Mineral Material			Carbonate / Basic / Acidic Bedrock			Organic		Mineral Soil and Parent Mineral	Carbonate / Basic / Acidic Bedrock			
Site	Surficial Deposits				Bedrock		Shallow Water		Surficial Deposits		Bedrock	Open Water		Shallow Water
System			Terrestrial						Wetland			L	Aquatic	
			L						START HERE					

Follow the Figure ELC Community Tables. leading to Diagrammatic Key, using the Description Framework fields and their attributes, number to the next key. igure

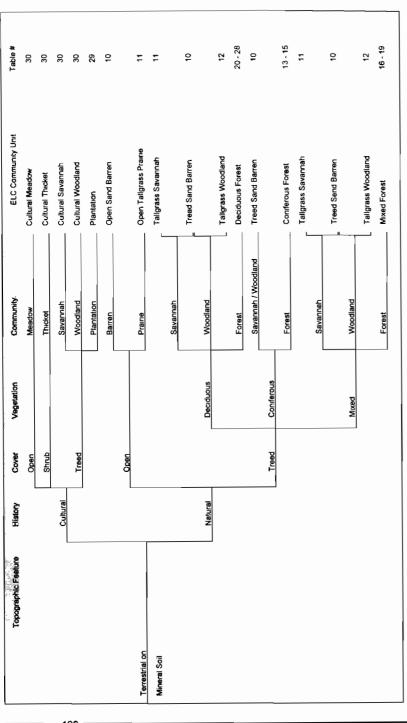


Figure 8. Diagrammatic Key for Terrestrial Communities on Mineral Soil.

Topographic Feature	History	Cover	Vegetation	Community	ELC Community Unit	Table #
	Cultural				Cultural	29 - 30
Beach / Bar		Open		Barren / Meadow	Open Beach / Bar	-
	Natural	Shrub		Barren / Thicket	Shrub Beach / Bar	-
				Sayannah / Woodjand	Treed Beach / Bar	-
		Treed				
				Forest	Forest	13 - 28
	Cultural				Cultural	29 - 30
Sand Dune		Open		Barren / Meadow	Open Sand Dune	2
	Natura	Shrub		Barren / Thicket	Shrub Sand Dune	2
				Savannah / Woodland	_ Treed Sand Dune	2
		Treed				
				Forest	_ Forest	13 - 28
	Cultural				Culturel	29 - 30
Bluff		Open		Barren / Meadow	Open Bluff	8
	Natural	Shrub		Barren / Thicket	Shrub Bluff	ю
				Savannah / Woodland	Treed Bluff	6
		Treed				
				Forest	Forest	13 - 28
	Cultural				_ Cultural	29 - 30
Valley Slope / Tablefand		Open		Barren / Meadow	_ Open Sand Barren	10
Rolling Upland	Natural	Shrub		Barren / Thicket	Shrub Sand Barren	10
				Savannah / Woodland	Treed Sand Barren	10
		Treed				
				1	10000	000

Figure 9. Diagrammatic Key for Terrestrial Communities on Parent Mineral Material

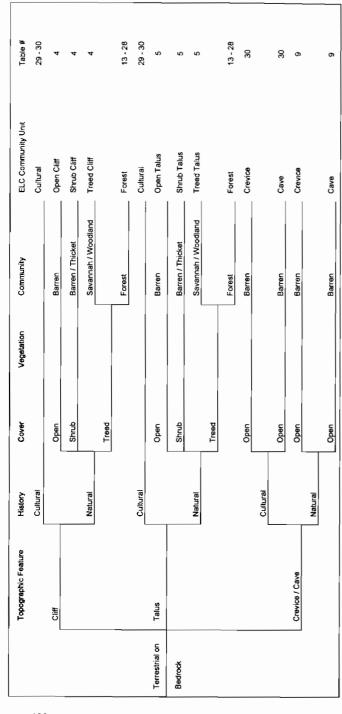


Figure 10. Diagrammatic Key for Terrestrial Communities on Bedrock (one of two Figures).

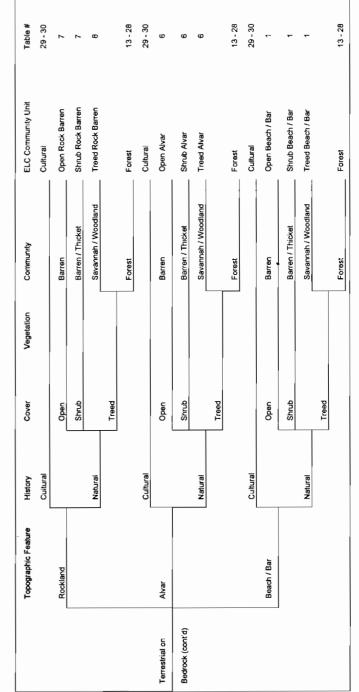


Figure 11. Diagrammatic Key for Terrestrial Communities on Bedrock, continued from Figure 10.

ELC Community Unit Table #	Organic Shallow Marsh 48	Organic Thicket Swamp 41	Mineral Shallow Marsh 47		Mineral Thicket Swamp 40	Bedrock Shallow Marsh 47		Bedrock Thicket Swamp 40
ELC O	Organic Sh	Organic Th	Mineral Sh		Mineral Thi	Bedrock St		Bedrock Tr
Community	Marsh	Swamp	Marsh		Swamp	Marsh		Swamp
Vegetation								
Cover	Open	Shrub	Open		Shrub	Open		Shrub
History								
Fopographic Feature	Lacustrine / Riverine			Lacustrine / Riverine			Lacustrine / Riverine	
Substrate	Organic			Parent Mineral Meterial			Acidic / Basic / Carbonate Bedrock	
				Shallow Water	Wetlands			

Figure 12. Diagrammatic Key for Wetland Communities in Shallow Water.

Table #	45	42	43	14	42	43	39	32 - 33	35 - 36	42	43
ELC Community Unit	Organic Meadow Marsh	Open Fen	Open Bog	Organic Thicket Swamp	Shrub Fen	Shrub Bog	Organic Deciduous Swamp	Organic Coniferous Swamp	Organic Mixed Swamp	Treed Fen	Treed Bog
Community	Marsh	Fen	Bog	Swamp	Fen	Вод	Swamp	Swamp	Swamp	Fen	Вод
Vegetation					ļ		Decidnous	Mixed		Coniferous	
Cover		Open			Shrub				Treed		
History											
Topographic Feature											
		'			Wetlands on	Organic Substrates					

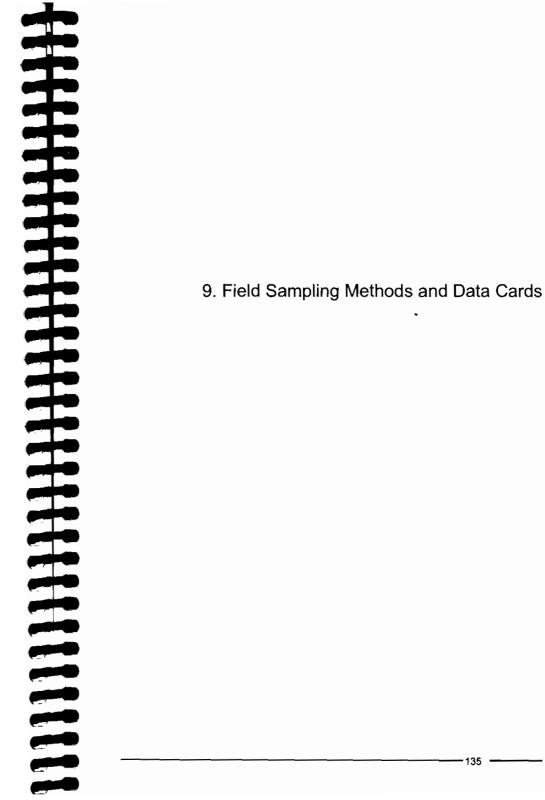
Figure 13. Diagrammatic Key for Wetland Communities on Organic Substrates.

	Tocographic			:			:
	Feature	History	Cover	Vegetation	Community	ELC Community Unit	Table #
			Open		Marsh	Mineral Meadow Marsh	44, 46
Wetlands on			Shrub		Ѕwапр	Mineral Thickat Swamp	40
Minaral Soil / Parent Mineral Material				Daciduous	Swamp	Mineral Deciduous Swamp	37 - 38
			Treed	Coniferous	Swamp	Mineral Conferous Swamp	31
				Mixed	Swamp	Mineral Mixed Swamp	34
			Open		Marsh	Bedrock Meadow Marsh	44
Wetlands on			Shrub		Swamp	Bedrock Thicket Swamp	40
Acidic / Basic / Carbonate Bedrock				Deciduous	Swamp	Mineral Deciduous Swamp	37 - 38
			Treed	Conferous	Swamp	Mineral Coniferous Swamp	31
				Mixed	Swamp	Mineral Mixed Swamp	34

Figure 14. Diagrammatic Key for Wetland Communities on Mineral Soil, Parent Mineral Material and Bedrock Substrates

	The state of the s						
	Topographic Feature	History	Cover	Vegetation	Community	ELC Community Unit	Table #
	Lacustrine		Open		Laka / Pond	Lacustrine Open Aquatic	49
Open Water							
Aquatics	Q		Č		Ower / Street	Buserios Open Amiesto	9
	District Control						P.
				Submerged	Lake / Pond	Submerged Shallow Aquatic	90
	Lacustrine		Open	Міхед	Lake / Pond	Mixed Shallow Aquatic	20
Shallow Water				Floating-leaved	Lake / Pond	Floating-leaved Shallow Aquatic	20
Aquatics				Submerged	River / Stream	Submerged Shallow Aquatic	20
	Riverine		Open	Mixed	River / Stream	Mixed Shallow Aquatic	20
				Floating-leaved	River / Stream	Floating-leaved Shallow Aquatic	20

Figure 15. Diagrammatic Key for Aquatic Communities in Shallow Water and Open Water.



Overview of ELC Field Sampling Methods

The ELC Field Sampling Methods comprise the set of site, vegetation and community characteristics that need to be sampled, on site, for the detailed description, identification and classification of ecological land units in Southern Ontario. Additional tallies for management or disturbance and wildlife characteristics are further proposed here, providing field data for evaluation purposes and for wildlife habitat analyses. Included here are the description of each characteristic proposed for sampling, details on how to sample characteristics and a set of standardized data cards that can be used to record the collected information. To show how these data cards are filled out, an example of completed data cards is included in the Case Study section of this manual.

The core set of data requirements is given in the ELC Community Description and Classification, Stand and Soil Characteristics and Plant Species List data cards included in this section. The optional Management or Disturbance and Wildlife data cards are also included.

An ELC Database has been developed in ACCESS 95 format. This database is designed to mirror the data cards, facilitating data entry. The database records and manages all the description, field sampling and classification data collected through the application of the tools and techniques presented in this manual. The Natural Heritage Information Centre's (NHIC) mammal, fish, bird, herpetofauna, lepidotera and plant species codes have been included. The plant species codes facilitate the calculation of the site Wetness Index and Floristic Quality Index according to Oldham et al. (1995). The database also provides access to the NHIC Community Ranking of that particular community (Bakowsky 1996). This database will be made available on the internet at the following address.

http://www.mnr.gov.on.ca/MNR/nhic/veg/lists/elc.html

Site and Visit Identification

The following site and visit variables are common to two or more data cards. These variables (with the exception of End Time) should be filled in on **each** card at the start of a survey, before any field work is done.

Site: A unique name or number for a specific area of study. Text field of up to 20

characters.

Polygon: A unique identifier for each polygon. Used for linking most of the tables in

the database, including GIS files Polygon numbers should be complete

and of consistent format.

Surveyor(s): The initials of all members of the field crew responsible for filling in the data

card.

Date: Date of field survey. Format DD-MM-YY [25-May-97].

Start Time: Time (24 hour clock) to nearest 10 minutes at which survey begins.

Format: HH:MM [09:20; 13:50].

End Time: Time (24 hour clock) to the nearest 10 minutes at which survey ends.

Format: HH:MM [10:00; 14:40].

Stand and Soil Characteristics

The Stand and Soil Characteristics data card represents the data collected within a polygon to adequately describe the composition of treed stands and soils. This information is later summarized and transcribed to the Community Description and Classification data card

Tree Tally by Species: The tree tally, using a wedge prism, represents an objective way to census the tree species within a polygon and to estimate their relative abundance and volume, using basal area. The tree tally is later summarized for the Stand Composition. The stand composition is a listing of the tree species found within the polygon, in order of decreasing dominance, along with their relative proportions. This represents the same stand composition assessment that is traditionally found in the Forest Resource Inventory (FRI) in Ontario.

After recording the **Prism Factor** for the wedge prism being used, complete the **Tree Tally** by Species by making prism sweeps. Use the NHIC 7-letter codes to record the species Each tree that meets the minimum size criterion should be recorded, according to species, and tallied. Refer to **Appendix D** for details on how to use a wedge prism. Dead trees are counted but not identified by species.

Prism sweeps should be made in parts of the polygon that are typical or representative of the stand. Sweeps should not overlap, so no tree is counted in more than one sweep. If the second sweep proves to be essentially similar in number and species composition to the first, no more sweeps may be needed. Otherwise, up to four sweeps will suitably describe the entire polygon. This is largely a judgement call and depends on the type of vegetation and variability of the site.

After the sweeps have been completed, total the tallies for each species. Calculate the relative value for each species by dividing the grand total by the total for each species except dead trees. Multiply the fraction by 100.

Basal Area (m²/ha) in each sweep is estimated by multiplying the total number of live trees counted by the "factor" of the prism or gauge (e.g., x 2). **Mean Basal Area (BA)** is the average of these estimates.

Stand Composition: This is a formula based on the results of the sweeps. Up to four of the most dominant species are listed in order of importance, followed by the relative abundance. Use NHIC 7-letter species codes to record the species (complete species list and codes are available from the database application).

Format: SPECIES(%) SPECIES(%) SPECIES(%)

Example: ACESACU75 - FAGGRAN10 - FRAAMER10 - TILAMER5

d: Stand is made up of 75% Sugar Maple (Acer saccharum), 10% Beech

(Fagus grandifolia), 10% White Ash (Fraxinus americana) and 5%

Basswood (Tilia americana).

Soil Analysis: At prism sweep locations, use a soil auger or Oakfield tube to sample a soil core. Assess the following characteristics for each soil auger or tube sample using the keys and guidelines found in the OIP Manual (1985 or 1993) (excerpts are found in the Soil Description section of this manual):

- 1. effective texture of the soil;
- 2. depth to distinct mottles (g =) or gley (G =);
- 3. depth of the organic layer;
- 4. depth to bedrock:
- soil moisture regime.

If two soil assessments indicate a consistent or uniform soil, no further sampling may be needed. Otherwise take additional cores to arrive at an overall assessment for the polygon.

The standard approach to sampling soil is to auger or core to a depth of at least 120 cm. As you auger or core, lay out the samples on the ground, in a contiguous fashion that reflects the profile of the soil. Use this profile to identify features and take depth measurements. Use the Soil **Profile** diagram to draw a composite picture of the soil horizonation found within the polygon, noting where mottles, gley, bedrock and other features are observed.

Stand Profile Diagram: This is a local profile indicating the structural nature of the polygon. Indicate local topographic features, microtopography and vertical structure to the vegetation. Give a scale on the vertical axis.

Notes: Include special features or considerations and other information about the polygon.

Plant Species List

Maintain a running list of all plant species identified within the core part of the polygon (Figure 16). To do this, conduct a botanical reconnaissance of the polygon, documenting as many of the plant species as possible.

It is very important to stay within the boundaries of the polygon while doing the botanical reconnaissance and documenting the plant species. This will minimize the number of plant species documented from adjacent ecological land units and save sampling time. The more variation in plant species that is recorded, because species from other polygons are included, the more difficult it will be to describe and classify the polygon. We strongly recommend that only the core of the polygon is used for the documented plant species list. Stay within a perimeter buffer strip of 10 metres or more, depending on the size of the polygon (Figure 16). When doing the plant species list, use the changing patterns in understorey, ground layer vegetation and site conditions (i.e., topography, slope position, moisture conditions) as a guide to stay within the core area and to minimize heterogeneity.

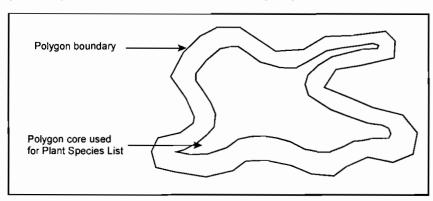


Figure 16. Diagrammatic representation of the core area of the polygon used for documenting the Plant Species List.

When recording the plant species on the data card, use the NHIC 7-letter codes for species names.

(Note: A complete list of plant species and their codes is available from the database application at the following internet address -

http://www.mnr.gov.on.ca/MNR/nhic/veg/lists/elc.html)

For each species, record the layers in which the species occurs and indicate the abundance (Tables 13 and 14). The Layer designations in Table 13 correspond to those used on the Community Description and Classification data card. Unknown species should be collected and a unique collection number (CoII) recorded.

Note: The plant species list and vegetation descriptions use layer codes (Table 13) which are applicable to any type of community. That is, these layer codes could be used to describe a Dry-Fresh Sugar Maple Deciduous Forest Type or a Cattail Mineral Shallow Marsh Type. In these two examples, both Sugar Maple and Cattail would be documented in the canopy layer (Layer 1).

Table 13. Codes used to stratify vegetation according to layers.

Code	Layer	Definition
1	Canopy	highest layer of vegetation; receives incident (direct) sunlight
2	Sub-Canopy	vegetation layer under the canopy; does not, for the most part, receive direct sunlight
3	Understorey	vegetation layer intermediate in height between the canopy and ground layer; e.g., in a forest it would be represented by the shrub and sapling layer
4	Ground (GRD) layer	vegetation layer that is nearest to the substrate surface

Table 14. Codes used in estimating the abundance of plant species within the polygon.

Code	Abundance	Definition
R	Rare	represented in the polygon by less than about three to five individuals or small clumps
0	Occasional	present as scattered individuals throughout the polygon or represented by one or more large clumps of many individuals; most species will fall into this category
A	Abundant	represented throughout the polygon by large numbers of individuals or clumps; likely to be encountered anywhere in the polygon; usually forming > 10% ground cover
D	Dominant	represented throughout the polygon by large numbers of individuals or clumps; visually more abundant than other species; forming > 10% ground cover and >35% vegetation cover in any one stratum

Community Description and Classification

The Community Description and Classification data card provides, in part, a synthesis of the information collected on the Stand and Soil Characteristics and Plant Species List data cards. This card provides a consistent and formal polygon description upon which the community identification and classification are based.

Community Description

Polygon Description: For each of the ELC Polygon Description variables (e.g., System, Site, Substrate, Topographic Feature, History, Cover, Plant Form and Community; refer to the Description Framework section of this manual) select the suitable attribute for the polygon, using the keys, and check the appropriate box on the data card. Only one box can be checked in each description field.

Stand Description: The vegetation of the polygon is described by assessing the height, cover and species composition by layer. Assessing the plant species composition by layer is easier once the Stand and Soil Composition and Plant Species List data cards have been completed.

First, stratify the vegetation according to the layer codes (Table 13) and record the height which best describes that layer (Table 15). Since the vertical structure of vegetation can be complex, up to two height codes can be recorded to characterize a particular layer of vegetation. For example, in a forest, the understorey layer can comprise shrubs and tree saplings from 0.5 m to 10 m. In this case, a height code of 3-5 or 5-3 can be recorded, depending on which height class is considered to be most important.

Then, by Layer, assess the overall vegetation cover and score according to the Cover (CVR) codes in Table 16.

Table 15. Height (HT) codes used to describe vegetation within polygon.

Height (HT) Codes	Definition
1	HT > 25 m
2	10 m < HT s 25 m
3	2 m < HT ≤ 10 m
4	1 m < HT < 2 m
5	0.5 m < HT < 1 m
6	0.2 m < HT ≤ 0.5 m
7	HT ≤ 0.2 m

Table 16. Cover codes used to estimate vegetation cover (i.e., absolute cover) by layer.

Cover (CVR) Codes	Definition .
0	none (vegetation layer not represented in the stand)
1	0% < CVR ≤ 10%
2	10% < CVR ≤ 25%
3	25% < CVR ≤ 60%
4	CVR > 60%

Finally, characterize the vegetation by listing up to four (4) plant species, in each layer, in order of decreasing cover or importance. Use the following symbols to characterize the relative abundance of species in the listing: >> much greater than, > greater than; or = equal to. Use NHIC 7-letter species codes.

Format: Example: Vegetation:

SPECIES >> SPECIES = SPECIES > SPECIES
ARANUDI >> TRIGRAN = ACESAGU > ALLTRIC
Ground layer within this forest is dominated by Sarsaparilla
(Aralia nudicaulis), which is much greater than White Trillium
(Trillium grandiflorum), which is about equal in abundance to
Sugar Maple (Acer saccharum), which is greater than Wild
Leek (Allium tricoccum).

Note: Any type of vegetation community can be characterized using all four of the Layer codes, the Height codes and the Cover codes shown above, whether it be a Cattail Mineral Shallow Marsh Type or a Dry – Fresh Sugar Maple Deciduous Forest Type. In the case of the Cattail Mineral Shallow Marsh Type, Cattail would be recorded in the Canopy layer, along with the appropriate Height and Cover codes. This system can, therefore, characterize the vertical structure of herbaceous and shrub vegetation communities in the same way treed communities have traditionally been characterized.

Stand Composition: Copy the Stand Composition and the basal area estimate (BA) from the Stand and Soil Characteristics data card.

Size Class Analysis: For each of the four tree diameter size classes (Table 17), make a visual estimate of the abundance of stems using the codes provided in Table 18. This is to provide a general portrayal of the size class distribution within the stand

Table 17. Tree size classes. Represents DBH (diameter at breast height; 1.3 m above ground) measured in cm.

Tree Size Classes
< 10 cm
10 - 24 cm
25 - 50 cm
> 50 cm

Standing Snags and Deadfall assesses the amount of standing and fallen dead woody material within the polygon. The number of Standing Snags is estimated using the abundance codes (Table 18) by four tree diameter size classes. Similarly, the amount of Deadfall is estimated by using the abundance codes (Table 18) by four tree diameter size classes.

Table 18. Abundance codes for standing snags and deadfall, along with their definitions.

Abundance Codes	Term	Definition
N	None	no standing or fallen woody stems
R	Rare	represented by only one to a few standing or fallen woody stems
0	Occasional	represented as scattered standing or fallen woody stems throughout a community, or represented by one or more large clumps
A	Abundant	represented throughout the polygon or community by large numbers of standing or fallen woody stems; likely to be encountered anywhere in the polygon

Community Age: Check one box representing the estimated seral age or successional stage of the community represented in the polygon, using the terms defined in Table 19.

Table 19. Codes for community age and their associated definitions (adapted from National Vegetation Working Group 1990)

Code	Ring Group 1990). Definition
Pioneer	a community that has invaded disturbed or newly created sites and represents the early stages of either primary or secondary succession
Young	a community that has not yet undergone a series of natural thinnings and replacements; plants are essentially growing as independent individuals rather than as members of a phyto-sociological community
Mid-aged	a community that has undergone natural thinning and replacement as a result of species interaction and often contains examples of both early successional and late successional species
Mature	a successionally maturing community dominated primarily by species that are replacing themselves and are likely to remain an important component of the community if it is not disturbed again; significant remnants of early seral stages may still be present
Old Growth	a self-perpetuating community composed primarily of late seral species that show uneven stand age distribution, including large old trees (generally older than 120 years) without open-grown characteristics

Soil Analysis: Transfer a synthesis of the soil work done on the Stand and Soil Characteristics data card. Determine an overall effective soil texture assessment, the depth of organics, depth to distinct or prominent mottles (g =) and gley (G =)(cm), depth to bedrock and the moisture regime for the entire polygon, according to OIP (1985 or later versions). Indicate whether the soil conditions within the polygon are variable and heterogeneous or relatively consistent and homogeneous.

Community Classification

Community Class: Determine the ELC Community Class for the polygon, using the ELC Keys and Community Tables, and record it with its appropriate code on the data card.

Community Series: Determine the ELC Community Series for the polygon, using the ELC Keys and Community Tables, and record it with its appropriate code on the data card.

Ecosite: Use the ELC Keys and Community Tables, along with the moisture regime of the polygon, to determine the Ecosite designation and code for the polygon. If the polygon does not fit an existing Ecosite designation, record a provisional name and fill out a New Ecosite form (see Appendix C) and submit it to the Southern Region ELC Working Group.

Vegetation Type: Use the ELC Keys and Community Tables to determine the Vegetation Type of the polygon. If the polygon does not fit an existing Vegetation Type, assess whether it represents an acceptable variation of an existing Vegetation Type If the polygon still does not fit an existing type, record a provisional name and fill out a **New Vegetation** Type form (see Appendix C) and submit it to the Southern Region ELC Working Group.

Inclusions and Complexes: Inclusions and complexes represent two or more distinct community types present within a single polygon or where a polygon represents complex and variable site and vegetation conditions. They help document variation or heterogeneity within polygons. Inclusions represent distinct communities that can be found within a polygon but are too small to be visible on air-photos or to map (< 0.5 ha; see Figure 17). Inclusions typically represent a single, or sometimes a few, separate and isolated community elements. Complexes occur where site and vegetation conditions are variable, represented by two or more communities intermingled in a mosaic that is too complex to map (see Figure 17).

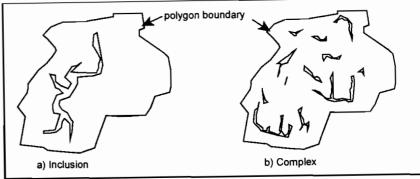


Figure 17. Diagrammatic representation of inclusions and complexes.

Indicate whether inclusions or complexes are present within the polygon by putting a check mark beside the appropriate term. Record the ELC codes for Ecosites or Vegetation Types that represent the inclusions or complexes. A separate Community Description and Classification data card may be completed for each type and included with the polygon data package.

Disturbance

The Disturbance data card lists common disturbance factors. Each disturbance factor is scored on a scale from 0 to 3 for both Intensity and Extent. The two scores can be multiplied to produce a rating per disturbance. Score the time that has passed since the last major logging event separately on a single scale.

Each disturbance factor should be scored in every polygon, even if the overall score is 0 (none x none). Some judgement and experience may be required to score certain disturbances. The following provides a guide to individual factors:

Time since logging: Use the time since the last important logging event that altered the overall structure or composition of the stand. Estimate time since logging from clues such as the condition of stumps and scars, the size of released saplings and the extent and shape of trees showing open-grown characteristics. Large stumps and logs will normally completely degrade in Southern Ontario in about 30 years.

Logging: Intensity is based on evidence of recent logging events. Fuel-wood cutting is assumed when occasional trees, especially dead or diseased individuals, have been removed. Evidence of selective cutting includes a more intensive level of tree removal, signs of skidding operations, one or more tree species targeted and so on. A diameter limit cut is indicated by heavy removal of large trees often resulting in an even-aged sapling response.

Livestock: Historic (>15 years) livestock grazing is inferred from the condition of the ground-layer flora and the tree species composition (such as the abundance of Hop-hornbeam (Ostrya virginiana) or Hawthorn (Crataegus spp.), both species tolerant of livestock impact). Other clues to previous grazing influences include the presence of old fences and opengrown trees in the forest canopy. Indications of livestock grazing in the last five to15 years are damage and compaction around tree roots and evidence of old browse lines.

Alien species: The presence of non-native (adventive) species in a patch is an indicator of non-pristine conditions. Some alien species, such as Common Buckthorn (*Rhamnus cathartica*) and Garlic Mustard (*Alliaria petiolaris*) can be highly invasive and dominate woodland areas to the detriment of the native flora. Intensity is judged from the number of alien species and the abundance of individuals.

Gaps in forest canopy: Only gaps caused by disturbance events such as logging, windstorm or disease should be recorded. Gaps due to local topography are not usually a result of disturbance. Intensity is judged by the number and size of gaps. The vegetation in gaps is generally distinct because gaps are frequently occupied by shade-intolerant species rather than shade-tolerant woodland species. Shade-intolerant species tend to replace slower growing woodland species when light levels are high.

Plantations or plantings: The presence of planted non-native or native species (usually, but not exclusively, coniferous trees) is treated as a disturbance event. Planting intensities range from individuals planted among existing vegetation to closed canopy plantations.

Tracks and trails: Only roads, paths and trails made and maintained by humans should be considered disturbances. Animal trails resulting from wildlife movement are not included. Faint trails are visible mostly as compacted and vegetation-free strips on the ground surface. Well-marked trails are usually actively managed; the trail itself is wider and some brush may be cut at the side of the trail. There are often signs of erosion on the trail itself and there may

be a change in the trail-side vegetation. Tracks or roads are, or have been, used by vehicles. There is commonly a gap in the canopy above the trail and a distinct flora along the trail.

Dumping: Any dumping of material, including field stone top-soil or organic material, should be recorded.

Earth displacement: Excavation of soil for any reason is recorded, including extraction of sand and drainage operations.

Recreational use: Signs of recreational use include tracks and recreational vehicle trails, signs of hunting (deer platforms, large numbers of spent cartridges), fire pits, empty bottles and drink cans, forts and so on.

Sugar bush operations: Light or occasional sugar bush operations include historic evidence, tapping of occasional trees and instances where there is little recent evidence of selective cutting for sugar bush. Heavy impact includes the presence of a permanent network of sap tubes and forest management towards the sugar bush operation.

Noise: Persistent or repeated noise, for example from highways, railways, airports or manufacturing operations, should be recorded. Occasional noise such as from farm machinery need not be recorded.

Disease or death of trees: This disturbance category should be applied to generalized events, not to the senescence and death of individuals in the forest canopy. Generalized tree death can occur, for example, as a result of changes in site drainage or pathogens such as Dutch Elm Disease.

Wind throw (blow down): Evidence that trees have been uprooted or broken by wind should be recorded. Isolated, single tree falls or damage to small branches should not be noted

Deer browse: Evidence of deer browse ranges from light pruning of favoured food species to distinct browse lines above an open ground layer.

Beaver activity: Beaver activity can range from removal of occasional small stems, through alteration of vegetation structure (e.g., felled trees) to flooding.

Flooding: Both seasonal inundation (swamps, vernal pools) and flooding events along water courses should be recorded.

Fire: Evidence from fire includes charcoal in the soil horizons, tree scarring and burned trees. Do not record recreational fire pits for which there is no evidence of spread to the surrounding vegetation.

Ice damage: Any damage to the vegetation resulting from ice storms should be recorded.

Other: Record and name other disturbances.

Wildlife

Weather information is recorded on the **Wildlife** data card. Such information can be useful for helping to interpret records or results.

Temperature: Record of approximate ambient temperature (°C) during the field survey.

Cloud: Record, in tenths, the proportion of the sky covered by clouds.

Wind: Record the Beaufort Scale number according to Table 20

Table 20. Beaufort Wind Scale (adapted from Whittow 1984).

Table 2	U. Beauton vina oce	ale (adapted from vviiittow 1504):
0	Calm	smoke rises vertically
1	Light Air	smoke drifts, but wind vanes do not
2	Light Breeze	wind felt on face, leaves rustle
3	Gentle Breeze	leaves and small twigs in constant motion; light flags extended
4	Moderate Breeze	wind raises dust and loose paper; small branches move
5	Fresh Breeze	small trees in leaf begin to sway
6	Strong Breeze	large branches in motion; whistling in phone wires; umbrella use difficult
7	Near Gale	whole trees in motion; inconvenience felt when walking against wind
8	Gale	twigs break off trees; progress impeded
9	Strong Gale	slight structural damage – roofing shingles, TV antennae
10	Storm	trees uprooted; considerable structural damage

Precipitation: Brief statement of precipitation, e.g., none, steady rain, fog.

Conditions: Brief statement of conditions, surveyor mood, etc., which might affect the survey; a text field of 50 characters.

Indicate the presence of Potential Wildlife Habitat by checking the appropriate box of features that are present within the polygon.

Wildlife: All wildlife sightings and signs should be recorded while in the polygon. Record each sighting by type (TY) (B = bird, H = herpetofauna, etc.) and by species (SP. CODE). Use four-letter codes, provided in the database, for recording species.

Evidence Codes: (EV) should be used to record the type of observation. If possible, give an indication of the estimated number of individuals, pairs or signs for each wildlife species.

ELC	SITE						POLY	GON:		
COMMUNITY	SURVE	YOR(S)			DATÉ				UTME	
DESCRIPTION & CLASSIFICATION START POLYGON DESCRIPTION							UTMZ		UTMN·	
POLYGON DES	SCRIP	TION			•					
SYSTEM		STRATE		POGRAPHIC FEATURE	н	STORY	PLA	NT FORM	со	MMUNITY
☐ TERRESTRIAL ☐ WETLAND ☐ AQUATIC	☐ PARE ☐ ACID ☐ BASK	RAL SOIL ENT MIN IC BEDRK C BEDRK		ACUSTRINE IVERINE DITTOMLAND ERRACE ALLEY SLOPE ABLELAND OLL. UPLAND LIFF ALUS	□ NAT	TURAL TURAL	SUE SUE SECOND		☐ MAR ☐ SWA ☐ FEN ☐ BOO	EAM RSH AMP
SITE	CAR	B. BEDRK		REVICE / CAVE LVAR	_ (OVER	MIX	ED	PRA	
OPEN WATER SHALLOW WATER SURFICIAL DEP. BEDROCK			□ B	OCKLAND EACH / BAR AND DUNE LUFF	□ OPE	RUB			☐ wo	ANNAH ODLAND
STAND DESCR	RIPTIO	N:								
LAYER	нт	CVR	(>>	SPECIES I		DER OF DI IAN; > GRE				
1 CANOPY						_				
2 SUB-CANOPY										
3 UNDERSTOREY										
4 GRD. LAYER										
HT CODES: CVR CODES				3 = 2 <ht 10="" m<br="" ·="">10% 2= 10 < CV</ht>				m 6 = 0.2 <ht 4= CVR > 60%</ht 		′ = HT<0 2 m
STAND COMPOS	SITION:								BA:	
STAND COMPOS	JITION.		_		_		_		<u>Ι</u>	
SIZE CLASS ANA	ALYSIS	:		< 10		10 - 24		25 - 50		> 50
STANDING SNA	GS:			< 10		10 - 24		25 - 50		> 50
DEADFALL / LO				< 10		10 - 24		25 - 50		> 50
ABUNDANCE CODE	ES:		N =	NONE R	= RARE	0=00	CCASIC	NAL A = A	BUND	ANT
COMM. AGE.		PIONEER	₹	YOUNG		MID-AGE		MATURE		OLD GROWTH
SOIL ANALYSI	e.								ļ	
TEXTURE:	J.		DEI	TH TO MO	TLES	/ GLEY	g =		G=	
MOISTURE:			DEI	TH OF ORG	SANIC	S:	10			(cm)
HOMOGENEOUS	S / VAF	RIABLE	DEI	TH TO BED	ROC	< :				(cm)
COMMUNITYC	LASSI	FICATION	ON:							
COMMUNITY CL	ASS:							CODE:		
COMMUNITY SE	RIES:							CODE:		
ECOSITE:								CODE:		
VEGETATION TY	PE:							CODE:		
INCLUSI	ON							CODE:		
COMPL	EX	+-						CODE:		_
Notes:										

		SITE:			_	_
ELC		POLYGON	l:			_
STAND & SOIL		DATE:				
CHARACTERISTI	CS	SURVEYO	R(S):			
TREE TALLY BY SPEC	IES:					
PRISM FACTOR		1	ı	г		1
SPECIES	TALLY 1	TALLY 2	TALLY 3	TALLY 4	TOTAL	RELATIVE AVERAGE
	ļ	ļ				
•••••••••••	<u></u>		<u> </u>			ļ
***************************************		† ·····	•			
		<u> </u>				
	ļ	ļ				
	ļ	 	 		 	
		†····				
·····		ļ				
TOTAL						100
BASAL AREA (BA)						MEAN.
DEAD						
STAND COMPOSITION:						
- · · · · · - · · ·						
SOIL ASSESSMENT:	1	2	3	4		
SOIL ASSESSMENT:	1	2	3	4		
SOIL ASSESSMENT:	1 g=	2 g=	3 g=	4 g=		
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES:						
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES: DEPTH TO GLEY:	g=	g=	g=	g=		
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES: DEPTH TO GLEY: DEPTH OF ORGANICS	g=	g=	g=	g=		
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES: DEPTH TO GLEY: DEPTH OF ORGANICS DEPTH TO BEDROCK	g=	g=	g=	g=		
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES: DEPTH TO GLEY: DEPTH OF ORGANICS DEPTH TO BEDROCK MOISTURE REGIME	g= G=	g=	g=	g=		SOIL PROFILE
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES: DEPTH TO GLEY: DEPTH OF ORGANICS DEPTH TO BEDROCK MOISTURE REGIME	g= G=	g=	g=	g=		SOIL PROFILE
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES: DEPTH TO GLEY: DEPTH OF ORGANICS DEPTH TO BEDROCK MOISTURE REGIME	g= G=	g=	g=	g=		SOIL PROFILE
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES: DEPTH TO GLEY: DEPTH OF ORGANICS DEPTH TO BEDROCK MOISTURE REGIME	g= G=	g=	g=	g=		SOIL PROFILE
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES: DEPTH TO GLEY: DEPTH OF ORGANICS DEPTH TO BEDROCK MOISTURE REGIME	g= G=	g=	g=	g=		SOIL PROFILE
SOIL ASSESSMENT: TEXTURE DEPTH TO MOTTLES:	g= G=	g=	g=	g=		SOIL PROFILE

ELC	SITE:
PLANT SPECIES LIST	POLYGON:
	DATE:
	SURVEYOR(S):

LAYERS: 1 = CANOPY > 10m 2 = SUB-CANOPY 3 = UNDERSTOREY 4 = GROUND (GRD.) LAYER

ABUNDANCE CODES: R = RARE 0 = OCCASIONAL A = ABUNDANT D = DOMINANT

ABUNDANCE CODE					- OCCASION	AL,						C 5.60
	LAYER				3576617				LA'	COLL.		
SPECIES CODE	1	2	3	4	coll.		SPECIES CODE	1	2	3	4	COLL.
	7.2.3		lan :					160	100 TO	9200		
			\dashv							-		
								1				
						Ì						
			_						-			
				_								
		Ш						 _				
		\vdash	_					┝	1			-
								-	-		_	
		\vdash			_							
	<u> </u>							-		-		
											\vdash	_
								ــــــ	_			
						ļ						
	-	\vdash						\vdash	+	\vdash	\vdash	
									1	\vdash		
		1						-	1	┡	\vdash	
						•			_	•		_

Page of

MANAGEMENT / DISTURBANCE DISTURBANCE / EXTENT TIME SINCE LOGGING INTENSITY OF LOGGING EXTENT OF LOGGING SUGAR BUSH OPERATIONS EXTENT OF OPERATIONS GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	POLYGO DATE: SURVEY 0 > 30 YRS NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NON		2 5 · 15 YRS SELECTIVE WIDESPREAD MODERATE WIDESPREAD INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD MODERATE	3 0 - 5 YEARS DIAMETER LIMIT EXTENSIVE HEAVY EXTENSIVE LARGE EXTENSIVE	SCORE †
DISTURBANCE DISTURBANCE / EXTENT TIME SINCE LOGGING INTENSITY OF LOGGING EXTENT OF LOGGING SUGAR BUSH OPERATIONS EXTENT OF OPERATIONS GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	SURVEY 0 > 30 YRS NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NO	1 15 - 30 YRS FUEL WOOD LOCAL LIGHT LOCAL SMALL LOCAL LIGHT	5 - 15 YRS SELECTIVE WIDESPREAD MODERATE WIDESPREAD INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD	0 - 5 YEARS DIAMETER LIMIT EXTENSIVE HEAVY EXTENSIVE LARGE	SCORE †
TIME SINCE LOGGING INTENSITY OF LOGGING EXTENT OF LOGGING SUGAR BUSH OPERATIONS EXTENT OF OPERATIONS GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	O > 30 YRS NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NON	1 15 - 30 YRS FUEL WOOD LOCAL LIGHT LOCAL SMALL LOCAL LIGHT	5 - 15 YRS SELECTIVE WIDESPREAD MODERATE WIDESPREAD INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD	0 - 5 YEARS DIAMETER LIMIT EXTENSIVE HEAVY EXTENSIVE LARGE	SCORE 1
TIME SINCE LOGGING INTENSITY OF LOGGING EXTENT OF LOGGING SUGAR BUSH OPERATIONS EXTENT OF OPERATIONS GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	O > 30 YRS NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NON	1 15 - 30 YRS FUEL WOOD LOCAL LIGHT LOCAL SMALL LOCAL LIGHT	5 - 15 YRS SELECTIVE WIDESPREAD MODERATE WIDESPREAD INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD	0 - 5 YEARS DIAMETER LIMIT EXTENSIVE HEAVY EXTENSIVE LARGE	SCORE 1
EXTENT OF LOGGING SUGAR BUSH OPERATIONS EXTENT OF OPERATIONS GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE	FUEL WOOD LOCAL LIGHT LOCAL SMALL LOCAL LIGHT	5 - 15 YRS SELECTIVE WIDESPREAD MODERATE WIDESPREAD INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD	0 - 5 YEARS DIAMETER LIMIT EXTENSIVE HEAVY EXTENSIVE LARGE	90010
EXTENT OF LOGGING SUGAR BUSH OPERATIONS EXTENT OF OPERATIONS GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE	LOCAL LIGHT LOCAL SMALL LOCAL LIGHT	WIDESPREAD MODERATE WIDESPREAD INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE HEAVY EXTENSIVE LARGE	
SUGAR BUSH OPERATIONS EXTENT OF OPERATIONS GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	NONE NONE NONE NONE NONE	LIGHT LOCAL SMALL LOCAL LIGHT	MODERATE WIDESPREAD INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD	HEAVY EXTENSIVE LARGE	
EXTENT OF OPERATIONS GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	NONE NONE NONE NONE	LOCAL SMALL LOCAL LIGHT	WIDESPREAD INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD	HEAVY EXTENSIVE LARGE	
GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	NONE NONE NONE	SMALL LOCAL LIGHT	INTERMEDIATE WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE LARGE	
EXTENT OF GAPS LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	NONE NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	LARGE	
LIVESTOCK (GRAZING) EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	NONE	LIGHT			
EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	NONE		MODERATE	†	4
		LOCAL		HEAVY	
	NONE		WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
ALIEN SPECIES		OCCASIONAL	ABUNDANT	DOMINANT	-
EXTENT OF ALIEN SPECIES	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
PLANTING (PLANTATION)	NONE	OCCASIONAL	ABUNDANT	DOMINANT	
EXTENT OF PLANTING	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
TRACKS AND TRAILS	NONE	FAINT TRAILS	WELL MARKED	TRACKS OR ROADS	
EXTENT OF TRACKS/TRAILS	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
DUMPING (RUBBISH)	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
EXTENT OF DUMPING	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
EARTH DISPLACEMENT	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
EXTENT OF DISPLACEMENT	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
RECREATIONAL USE	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
EXTENT OF RECR. USE	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
NOISE	NONE	SLIGHT	MODERATE	INTENSE	
EXTENT OF NOISE	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
DISEASE/DEATH OF TREES	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
EXTENT OF DISEASE / DEATH	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
WIND THROW (BLOW DOWN)	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	-
EXTENT OF WIND THROW	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
BROWSE (e.g. DEER)	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
EXTENT OF BROWSE	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
BEAVER ACTIVITY	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
EXTENT OF BEAVER ACTIVITY	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
FLOODING (pools & puddling)	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
EXTENT OF FLOODING	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
IRE	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
XTENT OF FIRE	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
CE DAMAGE	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
XTENT OF ICE DAMAGE	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	
THE	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	
	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	

		SITE:					
ELC		POLYGO	POLYGON:				
		DATE:					
WILDLIFE		SURVEY					
	START T	IME:	END TIME:				
TEMP (°C): CL		OUD (10th):	WIND:	PRECIPITATION:	<u>_</u>		
CONDITIONS:		,,-					

POTENTIAL WILDLIFE HABITAT:

VERNAL POOLS	SNAGS	
HIBERNACULA	 FALLEN LOGS	

SPECIES LIST:

ΤΥ	SP. CODE	ΕV	NOTES	#	TY	SP. CODE	EV	NOTES	#
,		<u>.</u>							
			•••••					***************************************	
							ļ		
						• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	ļ		
		ļ					ļ		
		ļ					ļ		ļ
			•••••	- <i>-</i>			ļ		
			•••••			······			·
				•••••			 		·····
						·····	 		
•••••				•••••		•	+		
•••••		•••••	•••••			•	 		
					L				

FAUNAL TYPE CODES (TY):

B = BIRD M = MAMMAL H = HERPETOFAUNA L = LEPIDOPTERA F = FISH Q = OTHER

FE = FEEDING EVIDENCE

EVIDENCE CODES (EV):

BREEDING BIRD - POSSIBLE

SH = SUITABLE HABITAT SM = SINGING MALE

BREEDING BIRD - PROBABLE:

T = TERRITORY A = ANXIETY BEHAVIOUR D = DISPLAY
N = NEST BUILDING

P = PAIR V = VISITING NEST

BREEDING BIRD - CONFIRMED. DD = DISTRACTION

NU = USED NEST NY = YOUNG FY = FLEDGED YOUNG FS = FOOD/FAECAL SACK

NE = EGGS AE = NEST ENTRY

OTHER WILDLIFE EVIDENCE.

OB = OBSERVED

OB = OBSERVED VO = VOCALIZATION DP = DISTINCTIVE PARTS HO = HOUSE/DEN CA = CARCASS FY = EGGS OR YOUNG

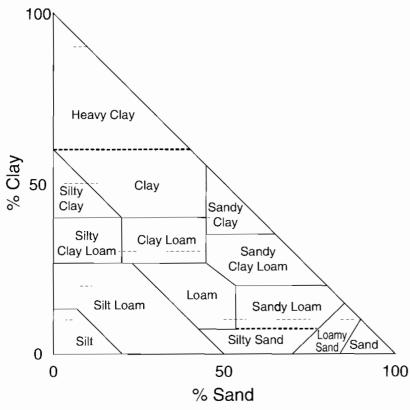
TK = TRACKS
SI = OTHER SIGNS (specify)

SC = SCAT



10. Soil Description

Textural Triangle



Notes:

- 1. The sand portion of the sand, loamy sand, sandy loam and silty sand texture classes are described more specifically based on the dominant sand size class. For example: very coarse sand, loamy very fine sand and fine sandy loam.
- 2. The texture classes may be modified by adding suitable adjectives when coarse fragments occupy > 20 percent of the soil volume. For volumes 20 to 50 percent, use coarse fragment class name (bonlder, stone, cobble, gravel) plus texture (e.g. gravelly sandy loam). For volumes > 50 percent, use additional adjective very (e.g. very stony clay loam).

Texture Field Tests

Feel Tests

Graininess Test: soil is rubbed between thumb and fingers to assess the percentage of sand. Sand feels grainy.

Dry Feel Test: for soils with > 50 percent sand. Soil is rubbed in the palm of the hand to dry it and to separate and estimate the size of the individual sand particles. The sand particles are then allowed to fall out of the hand and the amount of finer material (silt and clay) remaining is noted.

Stickiness Test: soil is wetted and compressed between the thumb and fore-finger. Degree of stickiness is determined by noting how strongly it adheres to the thumb and forefinger upon release of pressure and how much it stretches.

Moist Cast Test: compress some moist soil hy clenching it in your hand. If the soil holds together (i.e. forms a cast), then test the strength of the cast by tossing it from hand to hand. The more durable it is, the more clay is present.

Ribbon Test: moist soil is rolled into a eigarette shape and then squeezed out between the thumb and forefinger to form the longest and thinnest ribbon possible. Soils with a high silt content will form flakes or peel-like thumb imprints rather than a ribbon.

Taste Test: a small amount of soil is worked between the front teeth. Sand is distinguished as individual grains which grit sharply against the teeth. Silt particles are identified as a general fine grittiness, but individual grains cannot be identified. Clay particles have no grittiness.

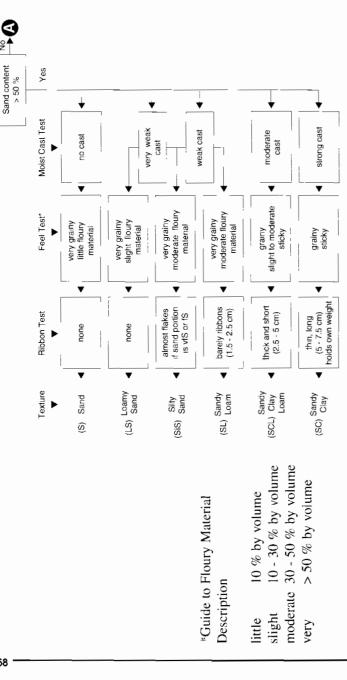
Shine Test: a small amount of moderately dry soil is rolled into a ball and rubbed once or twice against a hard, smooth object such as a knife blade or a thumb nail. A shine on the ball indicates clay in the soil.

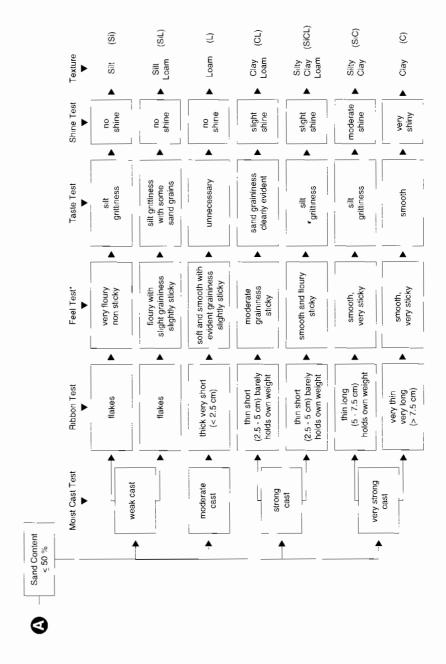
Field Test Characteristics of Texture Class

Texture Class	Feel Test	Moist Cast Test		
Sand	grainy with little floury material	no cast		
Loamy Sand	grainy with slight amount of floury material	very weak cast no handling		
Silty Sand	grainy with moderate amount of floury material	weak cast, no handling		
Sandy Loam	grainy with moderate amount of floury material	weak east, allows careful handling		
Loam	fairly soft and smooth with evident graininess	good cast, readily handled		
Silt Loam	floury with slight graininess	weak cast, allows careful handling		
Silt	very floury	weak cast. allows careful handling		
Sandy Clay Loam	very substantial graininess	moderate cast		
Clay Loam	moderate graininess	strong cast		
Silty Clay Loam	smooth and floury	strong cast		
Sandy Clay	substantial graininess	strong cast		
Silty Clay	smooth	very strong cast		
Clay 156	smooth	very strong cast		

Ribbon Test	Taste Test	Shine Test
none	unnecessary	unnecessary
none	unnecessary	unnecessary
almost flakes if sand portion is vfS or fS	unnecessary	unnecessary
barely ribbons (1.5 – 2.5 cm)	unnecessary	unnecessary
thick and very short (< 2.5 cm)	unnecessary	unnecessary
flakes, rather than ribbons	silt grittiness, some sand graininess	unnecessary
flakes, rather than ribbons	silt grittiness	unnecessary
short and thick (2.5 – 5 cm)	sand graininess clearly evident	slightly shiny
fairly thin, breaks readily, barely supports own weight	sand graininess clearly evident	slightly shiny
fairly thin, breaks readily, barely supports own weight	silt grittiness	slightly shiny
thin, fairly long (5 – 7.5 cm) holds own weight	sand graininess clearly evident	moderately shiny
thin, fairly long (5 – 7.5 cm) holds own weight	silt grittiness	moderately shiny
very thin, very long (> 7.5 cm)	smooth	very shiny

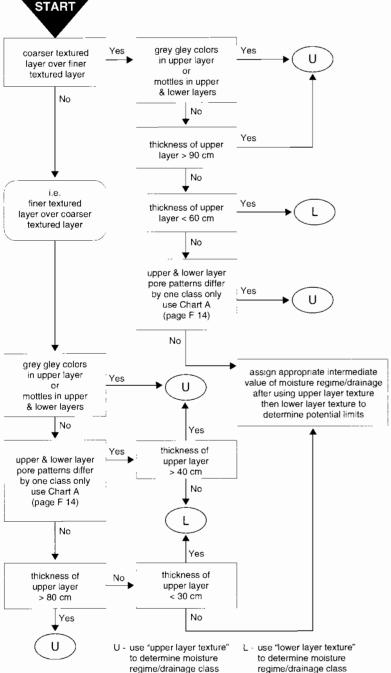
Finger Assessment of Soil Texture





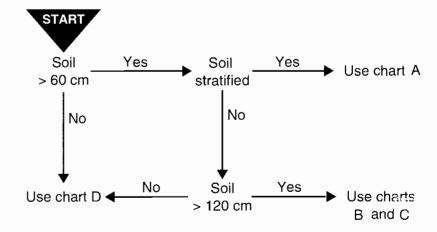
Sand content determination

Effective Texture in Stratified Mineral Soils (Chart A)



Determining Soil Moisture Regime and Drainage

- 1. Determine organic matter depth, mineral soil depth, texture, structure, pore pattern, coarse fragment content and stratification.
- If mineral soil is stratified and depth is > 60 cm use "Effective Texture in Stratified Mineral Soils – Chart A" (page 166) to determine the effective texture.
- If organic matter depth is > 40 cm or mineral soil depth is ≥ 120 cm, use
 "Soil Moisture Regime for Deep Soils Chart B" (page 167) to determine
 moisture regime, and "Deep Soil Drainage Chart C" (page 172) to
 determine soil drainage.
- 4. If mineral soil depth is < 120 cm, use "Soil Moisture Regime and Drainage for Shallow Soils Chart D" (page 173) to determine both moisture regime and drainage.



Soil Moisture Regime for Deep Soils (Chart B)

Using This Chart

This chart is for rating the moisture regime of a site in the field by examination of soil physical properties and soil profile characteristics.

Soil Moisture Regime is an integration of all the variations in soil moisture supply throughout the complete vegetation cycle. The moisture regime classes are inferred from the pore pattern and depth of the mineral soil material, the topographic position of the site and characteristics of the soil profile such as mottling or grey gley horizons, which indicate impeded drainage.

If the depth of organic material over mineral soil is less than that required for an organic soil (see right side of chart) and the mineral soil depth is >120 cm over bedrock, first determine the pore pattern from the texture, allowing for an increased pore pattern if significant compaction is evident (left side of chart). Next, determine if and where mottles (designated "g") or a grey gley layer (designated "G") are present in the soil profile. If g and G are absent. proceed horizontally into the centre section of the chart, along the appropriate pore pattern line, to the shaded box. If the box is labelled "ALL SLOPES", read the moisture regime class at the top of that column. If the box has a slope designation ("s"), determine the degree of slope on which the site is located, then choose the appropriate box between the shaded box and the box to the left and read the moisture regime at the top of the appropriate column. If g or G is present, measure the minimum depth from the top of the mineral soil to g or G and proceed horizontally along the appropriate pore pattern line to the box containing the correct depth value. Then read the moisture regime class at the top of that column, e.g. fresh (2).

For organic soils, determine if the depth of organic material exceeds the criterion for MR 7. If this is so, choose between MR 8 and MR 9 as indicated. If this is not so, determine the depth from mineral surface to g and decide if this meets the MR 7 criterion (g: 0 to 5 cm) or if the mineral soil criteria are to be used to rate the moisture regime in a class lower than 7.

Pore pattern indicates the numbers and sizes of spaces (pores) between the soil particles which determine the drainage and moisture retention characteristics of the soil. The classes are inferred from soil texture, structure and compaction.

Significant compaction can increase the pore pattern, usually by one class.

Symbols:

- g a layer with distinct or prominent mottles indicative of periodic saturation and aeration.
 - g: 15 to 30 the top of the mottled layer lies between 15 and 30 cm below the mineral surface.
- G a grey gley layer indicative of prolonged saturation.

G:60 to 90 the top of the grey gley layer lies between 60 and 90 cm below the mineral surface.

G < 45 the top of the grey gley layer lies within 45 cm of the mineral surface.

s degree of slope which results in significant surface runoff.

the normal site wit	h no slope o	r drainage	restrictions
	no stope of	i di ainage	resurctions

Soil Drainage is the rapidity and extent of removal of water from soils in relation to additions.

most probable drainage class(es); the dominant drainage class is shown in the first position.

VR very rapid

R rapid

W well

MW moderately well

I imperfect

P poor

VP very poor

- O organic horizons developed mainly from mosses, rushes and woody material (numbers indicate depth of O).
- Of (fibric) the least decomposed organic horizon containing large amounts of well-preserved fibre.
- Om (mesic) an intermediately decomposed organic horizon with properties intermediate to an Of and Oh horizon.
- Oh (humic) the most decomposed horizon containing only small amounts of well preserved fibre and the major amount of material at an advanced stage of decomposition.

Deep Mineral Soils (≥ 120 cm)

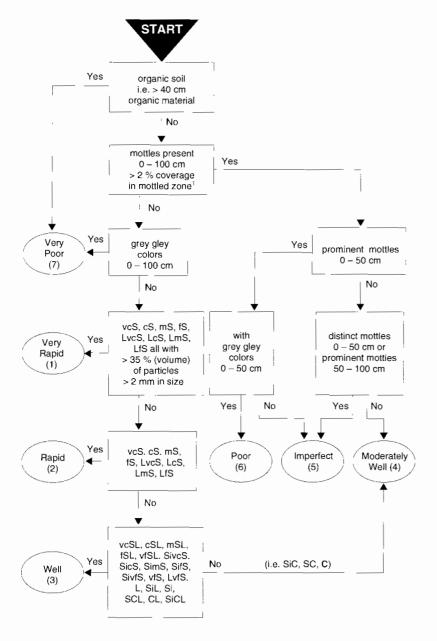
Pore Pattern of Mineral Soil Material			Soil Moisture Regime						
			Dry	(d)	Fresh (f)				
Mineral Soil Texture (uncompacted parent	Pore		dry	mod dry	mod fresh	fresh	very fresh		
material)	Pattern		0_	0	, 1	2	3		
All material > 2 mm	extremely open	g >	all slopes		I	l	ĺ		
		1	VR			1			
very coarse and coarse sands: loamy very coarse	very open	0 ►		all slopes	g 100-180 or G 1 <u>50-200</u>	g 80-100 or G: 120-150	g 50-80 or G- 90- <u>120</u>		
and coarse sands				R/VR	B/VR	MW/I	MW		
medium sand loamy medium sand	open	1 ▶		all slopes	g: 100-180 or G: 180-240	g 80-100 or G. 150-180	g 50-80 or G: 90-150		
,				R/VR	B/VB	MW/I	MW/		
fine sand. loamy fine sand; silty fine sand	moderately open	2 ▶			all slopes	g. 100-150 or G: 1 <u>50-210</u> F/W	g. 60-100 or G 1 <u>20-15</u> MW		
sandy loam: very fine sand. loamy very fine sand; sitty very fine sand	moderately retentive	3			l !	all slopes	g: 60-120 or G: 1 <u>50-21</u> MW		
loam silt loam: sandy clay loam, tructured silty clay and clay {aggregates < 10 mm}	retentive	4				all slopes	g 60-120		
silt silty clay loam clay loam, sandy clay tructured silty clay and clay (aggregates > 10 mm)	very retentive	5 >			s > 100 %	s < 100 %	g 60-120		
(aggregates > 10 mm)					VV/IVIVV	IVIVY/VV	MAA		
structureless silty clay and clay	moderately restrictived	6 ▶			s > 70 °/0	s < 70 %	g: 60-120		
					MW	MW	MW		
porous or fractured bedrock	restricted to very restrictived	7 8							
non-porous bedrock	extremely restricted	9 ►							

Deep Mineral Soils (≥ 120 cm)

Wet Organic Soils

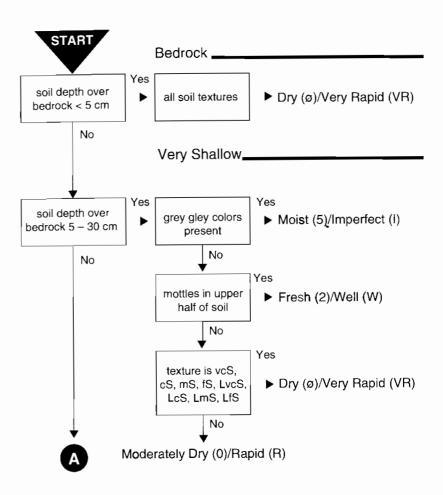
		SOII MO	ısture Regii		
	Moist (m)			Wet (w)	
mod moist	moist	very moist	mod. wel	wet	very wet
. 4	5	6	7	8	9
				ı	
g 30-50 or	g 15-30 or	g· 5-15 or	!		
G: <u>60-90</u> MW/I	G· <u>45-60</u> I/P	G: <u>< 45</u> P/I			
g: 30-50 or	g 15-30 or	g 5-15 or			
G 60-90 MW/I	G: <u>45-60</u> I/P	G: < 45 P/I	Of: 60-160	Of: > 160	Of: > 160 or
g 40-60 or	g 20-40 or	g 5-20 or	or Om: 40-100 or	Om: > 100	Om: > 100 or
G: 60-120 MW/l	G. 45-60_	G < 45	Oh: 40-100 with	Oh. >100 with	Oh: >100 with
g 40-60 or	g· 20-40 or	g. 5-20 or	g: 0-5	upper part not saturated	saturation I surface ali
G. 90-150 MW/I	G: 60-90	G < 60	if g is > 5 use mineral	, and	year and
-			soil criteria	G present to top of mineral	
g: 45 - 60	g: 30 - 45	g 5-30		soil	soil
MW/I	I/P	P'I		1	
g 45 - 60	g 30 - 45	g: 5 - 30		1	1
MW ⁴	I/P	P/I			
g 45 - 60	g · 30 - 45	g: 5 - 30			
MW/[l/P	Pil			
			1		
			VP	VP	ν

Deep Soil Drainage Class (Chart C)

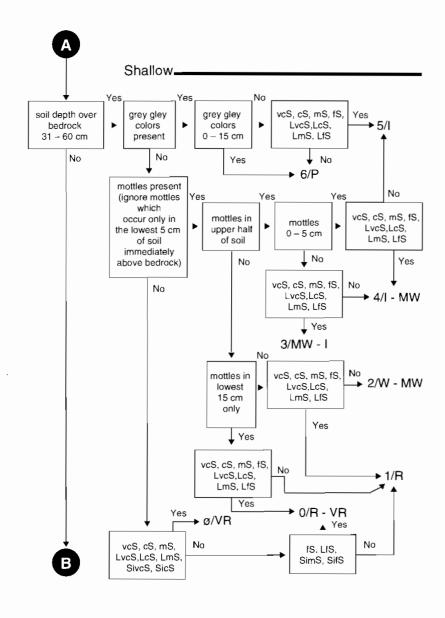


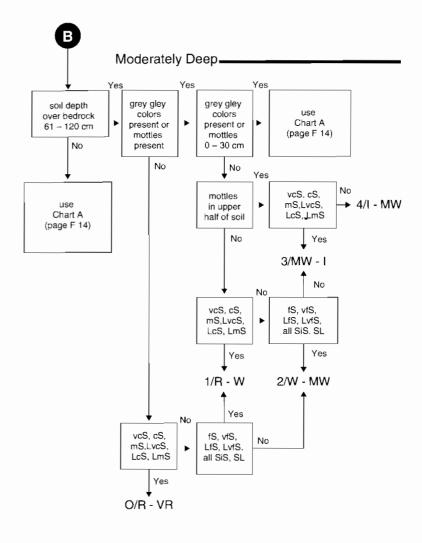
1. Exclude mottles that are few and faint

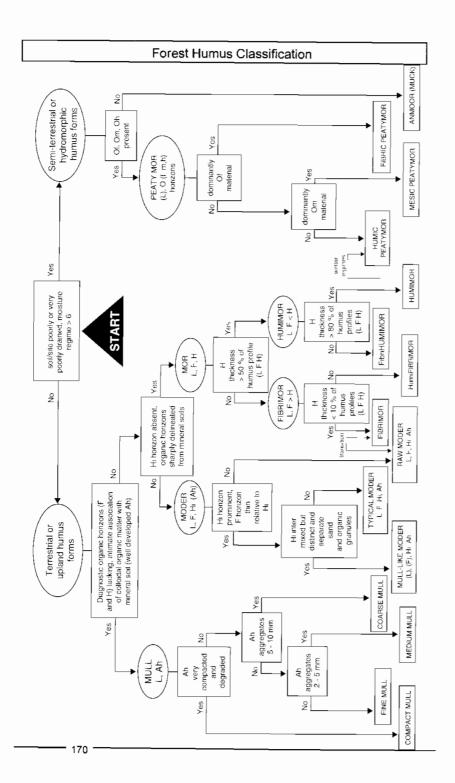
Soil Moisture Regime and Drainage for Shallow Soils (Chart D)



Note: It is difficult to differentiate between adjacent detailed (numbered) moisture regime/drainage classes because even a small difference in soil depth within the very shallow soils results in a large difference in the moisture retained for plant growth. Consequently, the broad moisture regime/drainage classes are indicated first. The numbered/lettered classes shown in the brackets merely indicate the centres of the broad classes.

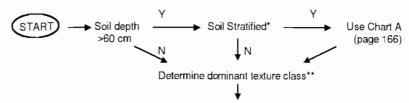






Quick Chart for Determining Soil Moisture Class

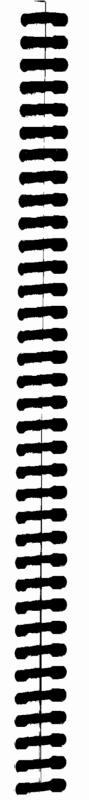
To quickly determine soil moisture class, (for .1 or .2 designation), after determining soil depth, use the following key and chart:



Proceed to Quick Chart below

- Horizons differing in pore pattern by 1 or more (See Chart B page 170)
- Soil Texture Classes see page 28

MOISTURE CLASS	Soil Depth	Effective Texture	Mottles/Gley		
	<5cm	Any	•		
DRY to	5-30 cm	Any	no mottles		
MODERATELY FRESH	31-60 cm	Any	no mottles in top 1/2 of profile. or mottles in lowest 15 cm only		
(D-MF)	61-120 cm	Csdy- Mlmy	no mottles		
θ, 0, 1 (.1 designation)	>120 cm	Csdy	no mottles within 180 cm of soil surface, or n gleying within 150 cm of surface		
	>120 cm	Fsdy	no mottles		
	31-60 cm	Any	gleying within 15 cm of surface		
VMOIST	31-60 cm	Not sandy	gleying present		
(VM)	>60 cm	Csdy	mottles within 15 cm or gleying within 45 cm		
6	>60 cm	Fsdy	mottles within 20 cm or gleying within 45 cm		
	>60 cm	Clmy-Mlmy	mottles within 20 cm or gleying within 60 cm		
	>60 cm	Flmy-Cly	mottles within 30 cm.		
WET (W) 7, 8, 9	>40 cm O la y ers	Organic	mottles within 5 cm of mineral soil surface, if mineral soil present		
FRESH to MOIST (F-M) 2-5 (.2 designation)	- none of the	above conditions	are true		



11. Case Study

Credit Valley Conservation - Natural Heritage Project

Watersheds continue to be used effectively as a natural boundary for an ecosystem approach to planning. The Credit Watershed Natural Heritage Project was developed by Credit Valley Conservation (CVC) and its watershed partners to document, in a comprehensive database, the natural heritage features and functions of the Credit watershed. A key principle of this initiative is to strengthen protection, restoration and management efforts in land-use planning and private-land stewardship (Credit Valley Conservation 1995).

All the stakeholders in the Project recognized a need to develop a methodology that would provide a standardized approach to mapping and the collection and management of field data on the watershed's natural heritage system components. The methods had to be suitable at watershed and subwatershed planning scales and provide a framework within which further site-level investigations could be nested. They also had to deliver a product within a reasonable time frame suitable for land-use and conservation planning applications.

A particular focus for the methodology was the development of standards for terrestrial and wetland systems. The ELC, while under development in 1996, appeared to be the best system available. Through practical trials carried out with Credit Valley Conservation in the spring and summer of 1997, the ELC was further developed and refined.

What follows is based on this experience. The steps that were taken are described and the supporting rationale for the application of the ELC is explained. This information is intended to provide a model approach to the application of the tools and techniques presented in this manual for subsequent practitioners in other jurisdictions, working at landscape or site scales.

Background

A team was assembled to carry out air-photo interpretation, mapping and field data collection of terrestrial and wetland communities within two Credit River subwatersheds during the spring and summer of 1997. Using the tools and techniques presented in this manual, natural communities were remotely sensed, described, classified and mapped to the Community Series level (Credit Valley Conservation, 1998). Following a standard field data collection approach, selected communities were further classified to the Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels.

Developing an understanding of the Site Region (Great Lakes—St. Lawrence Forest Region—6E), of its dominant forest types and the physiographic conditions of the area under investigation was necessary for orientation. Existing sources of information for the study area were also reviewed. This information included ANSI Reports, Environmental Impact Studies. Environmentally Significant Area Reports, existing Forest Resources Inventory Mapping, OMNR District Files, county soil reports, wetland evaluations, environmental assessments and physiography and surficial geology mapping.

Materials and Equipment

Ontario Basic Mapping (OBM) is available in hard copy and digital format for all of Southern Ontario at a scale of 1:10,000. It has become the standard for much of the natural area mapping being carried out.

Aerial photography can range considerably in scale, format, resolution, date and seasonal coverage. However, it will form the basis for most of the community mapping that is prepared. In this study, 1:8,000 scale spring photography has proven to be effective for community typing. Summer photography can be useful for the Ecosite delineation of forested communities, if the expertise is available to differentiate species in the canopy of trees in full

leaf. A pocket stereoscope (2 and 4X magnification) was used for air-photo interpretation. Community boundaries were transcribed directly onto the air-photo using a fine point technical pen. A 0.35 mm pen is suggested to minimize the potential for error.

Once the air-photos were interpreted, the polygon boundaries were transferred mechanically to the OBM using a Sketchmaster. A Sketchmaster is one of the more common reflection instruments used for manually transferring information from single vertical aerial photographs to base maps of a different scale (Avery and Berlin 1992). Alternatively, polygon boundaries could be transferred electronically through digitization directly from ortho-rectified aerial photographs. Increasingly, digital aerial photos on compact discs are being used, which has benefits in terms of changing scales, storing line files, etc. A dot grid and planimeter were used to calculate land cover area and percentage cover.

Table 21. Steps to Applying the ELC.

Step	Task	ELC Component Used	Products
Step		ELC Component Osed	Floadcis
1	Air-photo interpretation to identify and delimit ecological boundaries to form distinctive polygons	Polygon delineation process	Air-photos with polygon boundaries and unique polygon number
		Landscape Scale	
2	Description of polygon characteristics	ELC Description Framework	General community description of polygons
3	Ground truthing of polygons to confirm polygon boundaries and description	Community Description and Classification Data Card may be used for limited data collection	Confirmed polygon boundaries and description
4	Classification of polygons to ELC Community Class and Community Series	ELC Community Keys and Tables	Polygons classified to ELC Community Class and Community Series
5	Digitization of confirmed and classified polygons	ELC Database	Digital GIS polygon mapping of Community Class, Community Series and attribute data
		Site Scale	
6	Detailed in-field collection of vegetation and soils data within polygons	ELC Field Methods and Field Data Cards	Standardized vegetation and soil data sets for polygons
7	In-field description of polygons	ELC Description Framework	Complete description of the polygons' physical characteristics
8	In-field classification of polygons to ELC Ecosite and Vegetation Type	ELC Field Data Cards, Community Keys and Tables	Standardized ELC Ecosite and Vegetation Type classification of polygons
9	Digitization of community boundaries	ELC Database	Digital GIS Ecosite and Vegetation Type community polygons
10	Transfer of field data to database	ELC Database	Standardized community attribute data sets

Application

Table 21 outlines the steps that were taken for community typing and how they relate to components within the ELC. The process is set out in two distinct yet related phases, each containing several related steps. The first five steps provide a coarse or landscape-level classification of communities to the Community Series level. The next five steps provide a more detailed or site-level classification to Ecosite and Vegetation Type. Each phase generates a product that is appropriate for a particular scale of application.

Step One - Delineation

Polygon delineation can be done at one or two levels of detail, depending on the purpose of the study and the resources available. The initial delineation in Step 1 can be simplified to only map those boundaries necessary for Community Class and Community Series classification at a landscape scale. If a site-level application is planned, the interpreter should identify all ecological boundaries in Step 1 to ensure proper Ecosite and Vegetation Type delineation and classification in Step 8.

A minimum polygon size of 0.5 hectare is a feasible mapping unit for applying the ELC at a scale of 1:10,000. A first approximation of the distinct polygons was identified on the airphoto based on visible ecological boundaries. The boundaries were defined based on changes in the characteristics of the topography and vegetation. Distinguishing features such as texture and tone, which are visible on the air-photo, relate to physical characteristics such as landform, slope position, drainage pattern and vegetation-structure and composition—all of which were used as guides for polygon typing.

The following sequence of priority for air-photo interpretation was adapted from Arnup and Racey (1996):

- landscape pattern or landform (e.g., Topographic Feature: flat; hummocky or sloped, etc.);
- 2. position on slope (e.g., at base or top of slope, etc.);
- 3. drainage pattern (dark tones reflecting poor drainage, open water or wetland, etc.);
- vegetation species cover (e.g., "forest" for Community Class; "deciduous" for Community Series);
- 5. vegetation canopy or understorey characteristics or physiognomy (e.g., amount and pattern of canopy closure, appearance or understorey in canopy openings).

The unique I.D. was then inscribed on or adjacent to the polygon.

Landscape Scale

Step Two - Landscape-Level Description

The physical environment within the polygons must be documented to support future classification and database queries. The polygon characteristics visible in the air-photo were described, using the Polygon Description portion of the ELC Community Description and Classification Data Card and its related Keys as a guide. The interpreter follows a standard approach to describing those characteristics of the polygon to be typed that are visible in the air-photo. It is recognized that some categories under certain fields on the Data Card cannot be determined without field work (e.g., Bryophyte under Floristic Type). The Vegetation Characteristics and Environmental Characteristics columns of the ELC Tables were used to identify other key features of the community and its environment.

Step Three - Ground Truthing

The photo interpreter noted initial interpretations of new communities and followed up with limited ground truthing to verify typing. This allowed a "photointerpretive key" to be constructed to use as a model for future interpretations. The interpreter, in effect, developed an appreciation of the differences between the air-photo image and communities on the ground.

Step Four - Classification

Based on general cover type, the polygons were assigned to the applicable Community Class unit, referring to the ELC Keys and Tables (e.g., tree cover > 60% = Forest). Then the boundaries of the Community Series unit were delineated or refined, based on general vegetation cover. The interpreter then referred to Vegetation Characteristics and Environmental Characteristics in the Keys and Tables to aid in classification (e.g., deciduous species cover > 75% = Deciduous Forest). Finally, the ELC Code from the table was inscribed on or adjacent to the polygon.

Step Five - Mapping

The polygon boundaries were then transferred into a hard copy OBM format from the aerial photographs using the Sketchmaster and then digitized into a Geographical Information System (GIS) with the unique I.D. and ELC Code attached.

At this point, a set of maps and air photos, delineating communities to the Community Series level of the ELC with some limited attribute data, could be produced. This was generated based primarily on existing information sources, with only limited field checking or reconnaissance. These products provide a framework for the collection of more detailed information required at the site scale.

Site Scale

The following steps summarize the process followed for the collection and mapping of additional ecological characteristics at the Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels. The ecological boundaries mapped in Step 1 above were used to provide a first approximation. (If the necessary level of detail to define boundaries had not been provided at Step 1, a further interpretation of the air-photo would have been required to provide a finer level of resolution.) While recognizing that an Ecosite is a reflection of three primary characteristics — geology, soils and vegetation — the interpreter focused on identifying recurring plant species patterns. In this regard, recognition of changes in vegetation structure, species composition and physiognomy was necessary. It should be noted that, in certain instances, especially with small, isolated and generally homogeneous forest patches, the Ecosite boundary corresponded with the previously determined Community Series boundary.

Step Six - Detailed Field Data Collection

The vegetative communities of Southern Ontario tend to be highly complex, often subject to anthropogenic influences. In addition, there is a predominant use of spring photography, which makes detailed community classification difficult. As a result, field data collection is necessary for final typing of Ecosite and Vegetation Type units. The ELC Field Data Cards, Keys and Tables were used for consistent description and classification.

The field technicians carried out a brief reconnaissance within the polygon to confirm the pretyped boundaries and to familiarize themselves with the level of variation found within the community. While doing this, they began recording data according to the ELC Field Sampling Methods and Data Cards.

Step Seven - Polygon Description

Based on the reconnaissance survey carried out, as described above, the technicians were able to complete the Polygon Description fields on the Community Description and Classification Data Card. (In some cases much of this description had already been completed in Step 2 above.)

Step Eight - Classification

The technicians applied the vegetation and soils data to the Keys and to the Vegetation and Environmental Characteristics in the ELC Tables to classify the polygon to the Ecosite level. Vegetation Type units, which represent the finest level of detail and which are based solely on plant species composition, were assigned to polygons where appropriate.

Step Nine - Mapping

When the field work was finalized, the community boundaries were transferred from the airphotos to hard copy OBM format using the Sketchmaster and then digitized into the GIS with the unique I.D. and ELC Codes attached.

Step Ten - Database Assembly

The Field Data Cards are linked to the polygons through their unique I.D. The data was entered using the Microsoft ACCESS 95-based data system that has been structured to match the fields found on the data cards. The ELC Database linked to the GIS polygons provides a variety of opportunities for analysis and search and query.

Observations and Conclusions

A few observations and cautionary notes concerning air-photo interpretation are:

- there can be discrepancies in community typing between the landscape scale and the site scale due to the limitations of air-photo interpretation — e.g., what may appear to be a Deciduous Forest by air-photo interpretation may in fact be a Mixed Forest upon a site survey of the Canopy and Sub-canopy vegetation layers;
- some inclusions and complexing of communities may not be visible on air-photos;
- wetlands appear as dark tones in spring air-photos and the extent of coverage with coniferous trees may be over-estimated;
- spring photography may tend to under-value the extent of deciduous cover;
- old or over-mature plantations may appear as natural forest in 1:8,000 air-photos.

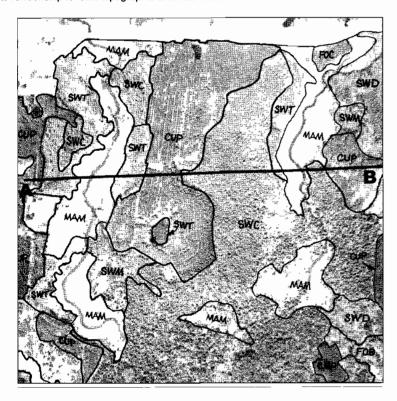
A certain level of expertise is required to apply the ELC. As a result, training or the employment of specialists will be necessary. Familiarity with air-photo interpretation techniques is essential, but requires time to develop. With the Credit Watershed Natural Heritage Project, once the expertise had been obtained, the interpreters were able to prepare a typical rural land-cover map for a complete OBM sheet (5 km. by 5 km.), from initial interpretation through to final digitization, within approximately four days. (If the mapping of all land cover is required — for example, to include existing land use — then approximately two days could be added to the time required for completion.) Expertise in soils also required training, following the standard procedures within the OIP Manual (1985). In addition, a field botanist, who was part of a three-person field team, aided in the identification of ground flora, which assisted in Ecosite description and documentation of unique species.

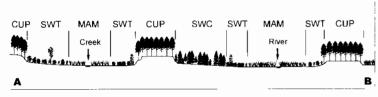
In addition to providing the classification and mapping of communities, the ELC process provided standard ecological data sets and a formalized data entry framework. Such data sets include Polygon Description, Stand Description, Composition and Structure, Soil Analysis, Vegetation Data, Management and Disturbance information and Wildlife Data. These data sets form the basis for the evaluation of natural features and areas, and for future monitoring. Species Listings and Vegetation Types have also been referenced against provincial rankings available from the Natural Heritage Information Centre (e.g., for Vegetation Communities see Bakowsky 1996 and for Rare Vascular Plants see Oldham 1993). These rankings were used to determine the presence of nationally or provincially significant species or communities and to develop regional listings. Examples of regional rankings are Riley (1989), Cuddy (1991) and Oldham (1993). This information was then used in the analysis of the terrestrial communities within the subwatersheds under study, to assist in determining priorities for protection. In addition, for communities where the plant list was sufficiently detailed, an evaluation was carried out to compare their flora using the Floristic Quality Assessment System for Southern Ontario (Oldham et al. 1995).

Some applications of the mapping and data collection techniques promoted within this manual will likely be too complex for private-land stewardship. A Conservation Plan Training

Manual, currently being developed by Credit Valley Conservation through the University of Guelph with support from the Ontario Heritage Foundation and others, will provide some assistance in using the ELC to classify and map communities at the property scale. At the present time, however, the mapping and inventory of communities through watershed studies and other inventories, with the support of landowners, continues to provide a very effective basis for future stewardship initiatives.

Two 1:8,000 scale air-photos have been reproduced below to illustrate community typing and its relationship to local topographic characteristics.

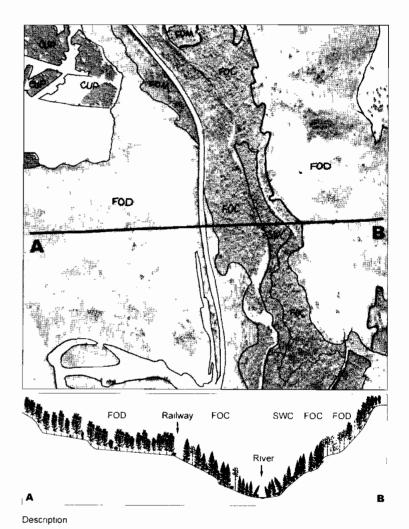




Description

Uplands have been reforested to Coniferous Plantation Lowlands support a Coniferous Swamp with transitions to Thicket Swamp, and then to Meadow Marsh on the floodplain of both the Credit River and Shaws Creek

Figure 18. Credit River Valley, southeast of the Village of Alton, Peel Region.



Deciduous Forest on sandy loam dominates the upper slopes of the valley. Coniferous Forest grows in the organic soils on sand and gravel of the mid and lower slopes. A Coniferous Swamp that displays boreal characteristics, due to a cooler microclimate and the presence of groundwater seepage, is located at the toe of the eastern slope.

Figure 19. Forks of the Credit Provincial Park in the Town of Caledon, Peel Region.

The following example is located in the headwaters of Caledon Creek, a tributary to the Credit River. Seven Figures follow which illustrate a 1:8,000 scale air-photo interpreted to the Community Series level, with one area interpreted to the Ecosite and Vegetation Type levels, the resulting GIS product and a complete set of data cards for a site identified on the map.

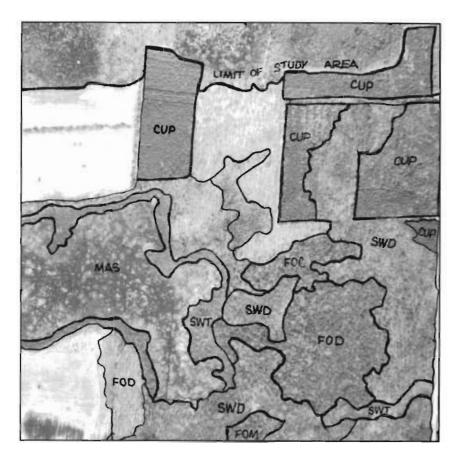


Figure 20. Air photo example of pilot area.

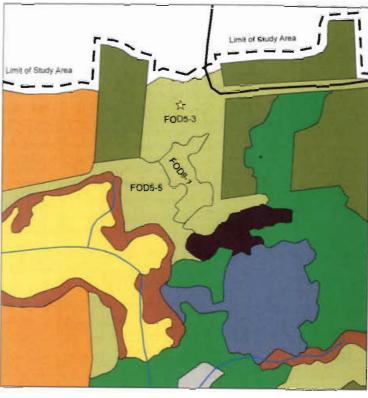
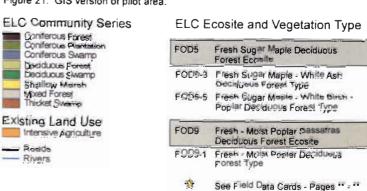


Figure 21. GIS version of pilot area.



ELC

SITE: CALEDON CREEK HEAD WATERS
POLYGON: 98 0001

DATE: 24 APRIL 98

SURVEYOR(S): NS SS

STAND & SOIL CHARACTERISTICS

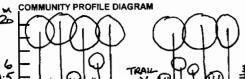
TREE TALLY BY SPECIES:

PRISM FACTOR	2					
SPECIES	TALLY 1	TALLY 2	TALLY 3	TALLY 4	TOTAL	RELATIVE AVERAGE
ACESACU	1219	13 10			19	60
TRAAMER	1:5	4			9 2	28
PRUSERO FAGGRAN		; 2				6
FAGGRAN		; 2			2	<u> </u>
				ļ		
		<u> </u>	_			
		<u> </u>		ļ		
		<u> </u>	<u> </u>			
						
			_	ļ		
TOTAL	14	18			32	100
BASAL AREA (BA)	28	36				MEAN: 32
DEAD	Ø	2				

STAND COMPOSITION: ACESACULO FRAAMER 20 PRUSERO 6 FACGRANG

SOIL ASSESSMENT:	1	2	3	4
TEXTURE	SiL	vfscL	VISCL	
DEPTH TO MOTTLES:	g= 7 0	9=>120	g= > 120	g=
DEPTH TO GLEY:	G= Z120	G=7120	G=>120	G=
DEPTH OF ORGANICS	Ø	Ø	Ø	
DEPTH TO BEDROCK	7120	>120	>120	
MOISTURE REGIME	3	2	2	





NOTES:

Figure 22. Stand and Soil Characteristics Data Card

PLANT
SPECIES
LIST

SITE: CALEDON CREEK HEAD WATERS
POLYGON: 98 0001

DATE: 24 APRIL 98

SURVEYOR(S): NS SS

LAYERS: 1 = CANOPY > 10m 2 = SUB-CANOPY 3 = UNDERSTOREY 4 = GROUND (GRD.) LAYER
ABUNDANCE CODES: R = RARE 0 = OCCASIONAL A = ABUNDANT D = DOMINANT

ABUNDANCE CODE	*******	LA				E er	AYER	GF4	
SPECIES CODE	1	2		COLL	SPECIES CODE		7 3	4	COLL.
PRUSERO	0	0			ERYAMER			A	
ACESACU		0	0		VIOCANA			0	
BETALLE	R				CAUTHAL			0	
BETPAPY	٥	R			DENLACI	<u></u> _	_	0	_1_
FRAMMER	0		R		GLAVIRG			0	
FAGGRAN	0	0	0		ALLTRIC"			Ą	
ABIBALS	_	R			DENDIPH		\perp	R	
TSUCANA		R			TRIEREC		-	K	
OSTVIRG		0	0		TAROFFI		-	Ŏ	
PICGLAU	_		R		MAICANA		+	R	
THUOCCI	2		R			-	+		
POPTREM	R				l	-	+		
							+		
	_						+		
-		_							
_	-						+		
							-		
			_						
			_				+		
	-		_						
			_				+-		
RUBOCCI			R		DRY		-	0	2
RUBIDAS			0		CAR			٥	3
RIBCYNO			٥		V10			0	4
PRUVIRG_		٥	0						'

Page ..l.... of ..l....

Figure 23. Plant Species List Data Card

ELC	ELC SITE: CALEDON CREEK HEAD WATERS POLYGON: 980001										
COMMUNITY		YOR(S).			55	DATE				_	3600
DESCRIPTION & CLASSIFICATION	START		, ·	END	1	-	24 A	TUTM:		S8 UTM	۷٠
		10:00	0		10:50]		J	17	48	62 7 5∞
POLYGON DES											
SYSTEM	SUB	STRATI	E		POGRAPHIC FEATURE	Н	ISTORY	PLA	NT FORM	CC	MMUNITY
TERRESTRIAL	ORG		I I	⊒ L4 RI	CUSTRINE VERINE	/ _`	TURAL	. I ⊓ su	ANKTON BMERGED	HA	KE ND
WETLAND	/	RAL SOIL	- [⊒ во	OTTOMLAND ERRACE	U cu	LTURAL	FLO	OATING-LVD	PO RIV	ÆR PEAM
AQUATIC	l	ENT MIN. IC BEDRK	,	□ v/	ALLEY SLOPE			∏FO	RB HEN	□ MA	R\$H AMP
	l	C BEORK	ַן ו	TR(ABLELAND DLL. UPLAND			I∏ BR	YOPHYTE CIDUOUS	I∏ FE	N
OLT C]_	B BEORK	. [.] T∕	ALUS REVICE / CAVE	<u> </u>		O MI	NIFEROUS		RREN ADOW
SITE					.VAR		COVER	_ U MI	AEU	PR.	AIRIE
OPEN WATER			ļ	⊐ві	DCKLAND EACH / BAR	□ op				☐ SA	CKET VANNAH
SURFICIAL DEP.				_ S/ _ Bi	AND DUNE .UFF	□ sh				X F0	CODLAND REST
- BEDKOCK						⊠ .TRI	EED			LI PU	ANTATION
STAND DESCR	IPTIO	N:									
LAYER	нт	CVR		(>>	SPECIES I				ASING DO		
1 CANOPY	2	4	Αc	۲.	ALW>>	FRA	AMER >	PRU	5ERO >1	FAG	GRAN
2 SUB-CANOPY	3	2	_		5Acu>1						
3 UNDERSTOREY	6	3	A	2.2	SACU >	PR	LVIRG				
4 GRD. LAYER	7	4	i —		AMER :				CAUTH	AL_	
HT CODES:	1 = >25 n				3 = 2 <ht 10="" m<="" td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>7 = HT<0.2 m</td></ht>						7 = HT<0.2 m
CVR COOES											
STAND COMPOS	ITION:	MC ES	*~	۰۰	•0*KH1	واحي	3 PKUDEK	36F7	CCIVANC	BA:	32
SIZE CLASS ANA	LYSIS	:		0	< 10	A	10 - 24	R	25 - 50	R	> 50
STANDING SNAG	SS:			R	< 10	N	10 - 24	R	25 - 50	~	> 50
DEADFALL / LOG				0	< 10	A	10 - 24	0	25 - 50	R	> 50
ABUNDANCE CODE	S:		١	N = 1	NONE R =	RARE	0=0	CCASI	ONAL A = A	BUND	ANT
COMM. AGE:		PIONEE	R		YOUNG	IX	MID-AGE		MATURE		OLD GROWTH
SOIL ANALYSI	S:										
TEXTURE: V	-52	L_	ļ	DEF	TH TO MOT	TLES	/ GLEY	g =	7120	G=)	>120
MOISTURE:	2			DEF	TH OF ORG	ANIC	:s: 💋				(cm)
MOGENEOUS)/ VAF	RIABLE		DEF	TH TO BED	ROC	K: '	>1	20_		(cm)
COMMUNITYCE	ASSI	FICAT	ION	<u>];</u>							
COMMUNITY CLA	ASS:	1	Fo	R	255				CODE:	fc	>
COMMUNITY SEF								-	CODE:	Foi	D
ECOSITE: DRY-F	RESH	S. M	A?	عما	DECIDO	کیت	FOREST		CODE: F	δD	5
VEGETATION TY	PE: TX	W-FR	٤3	4	SUGAR	MA	PLE-		CODE:		
WHITE A	SH I	DEC()	Dυ	ما	LS FOR	255	TYPE	_	fo	D5	-8
INCLUSIO		1							CODE:		
COMPLE	X						_		CODE:	_	
Notes:											

Figure 24. Community Description and Classification Data Card

	SITE:C/	ALEDON C	REEK HEI	AD WATER	 .5			
ELC	POLYGO		0001	-				
MANAGEMENT / DISTURBANCE	DATE: 24 APRIL 98							
<i>5.010.127.11.02</i>	SURVEY	OR(S):	NS 55					
DISTURBANCE / EXTENT	0		2	3	SCORE †			
TIME SINCE LOGGING	> 30 YRS	15 - 30 YRS	5 - 15 YRS	0 - 5 YEARS	<i></i>			
INTENSITY OF LOGGING	NONE	FUEL WOOD	SELECTIVE	DIAMETER LIMIT	//			
EXTENT OF LOGGING	NONE	LOCAL	(WIDESPREAD)	EXTENSIVE				
SUGAR BUSH OPERATIONS	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	<i>~</i>			
EXTENT OF OPERATIONS	(NONE)	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	$\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{L}}$			
GAPS IN FOREST CANOPY	NONE	SMALL	INTERMEDIATE	LARGE	71			
EXTENT OF GAPS	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD /	EXTENSIVE	<u> </u>			
LIVESTOCK (GRAZING)	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY				
EXTENT OF LIVESTOCK	(NONE)	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	$\square \varnothing$			
ALIEN SPECIES	NONE	(OCCASIONAL)	ABUNDANT	DOMINANT	1			
EXTENT OF ALIEN SPECIES	NONE	(LOCAL)	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	1			
PLANTING (PLANTATION)	NONE	OCCASIONAL	ABUNDANT	DOMINANT	$\overline{\alpha}$			
EXTENT OF PLANTING	(NONE)	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	φ			
TRACKS AND TRAILS	NONE	FAINT TRAILS	WELL MARKED	RACKS OR ROADS	2			
EXTENT OF TRACKS/TRAILS	NONE	(LOCAL)	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	3			
DUMPING (RUBBISH)	NONE	Light	MODERATE	HEAVY				
EXTENT OF DUMPING	NONE	(LOCAL)	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	1			
EARTH DISPLACEMENT	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	71			
EXTENT OF DISPLACEMENT	NONE /	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	$Q_{\underline{}}$			
RECREATIONAL USE	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	١ ،			
EXTENT OF RECR. USE	NONE	(LOCAL)	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	1			
NOISE	NONE	SLIGHT	MODERATE	INTENSE	2			
EXTENT OF NOISE	NONE	LOCAL	(WIDESPREAD)	EXTENSIVE	_2			
DISEASE/DEATH OF TREES	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	7			
EXTENT OF DISEASE / DEATH	(MONE)	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	\mathcal{P}			
WIND THROW (BLOW DOWN)	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	11			
EXTENT OF WIND THROW	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE				
BROWSE (e.g. DEER)	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	4			
EXTENT OF BROWSE	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	Q			
BEAVER ACTIVITY	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	A			
EXTENT OF BEAVER ACTIVITY	NONE)	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	φ			
FLOODING (pools & puddling)	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	α			
EXTENT OF FLOODING	NONE)	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	φ			
FIRE	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	α			
EXTENT OF FIRE	NONE)	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	φ			
ICE DAMAGE	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY	4			
EXTENT OF ICE DAMAGE	NONE)	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE	φ			
OTHER	NONE	LIGHT	MODERATE	HEAVY				
EXTENT	NONE	LOCAL	WIDESPREAD	EXTENSIVE				
				† INTENSITY x EXTE	NT = SCORE			
		_						

Figure 25. Management / Disturbance Data Card

-	
_	SITE: CALEDON CREEK HEAD WATERS
ELC	POLYGON: 98 0001
14/11 DI 177	DATE: 24 APRIL 98
WILDLIFE	SURVEYOR(S): NS 55
	START TIME: 10:00 END TIME: 10:50

TEMP (°C). 15	CLOUD (10th): 8 V	wind: Z	PRECIPITATION:	NONE
CONDITIONS: GC	QQ			

POTENTIAL WILDLIFE HABITAT:

	VERNAL POOLS	X	SNAGS
	HIBERNACULA	X	FALLEN LOGS
		ľ	

SPECIES LIST:

- SF L	OIES LIST.	,—		,					
TY	SP. CODE	EV	NOTES	#	TY	SP. CODE	EV	NOTES	#
\mathcal{B}	BCCH	SΜ		١] [<u></u>		
В	PIWO	VO		١					
B	AMCR	VO		١			<u> </u>		
1	AZUR	DB		2			<u> </u>		
H	SPPE		FEW	١			<u> </u>		
B	AMGO	VO		١			<u> </u>]
	COGA	OB		1					
							I		
] [
			•••••						
			•••••				Ī		
			••••••				Ţ		
		· · · · · ·	•••••				Ť		[
							Ť	,	
							1		
							1		

FAUNAL TYPE CODES (TY):

B = BIRD M = MAMMAL H = HERPETOFAUNA L = LEPIDOPTERA F = FISH O = OTHER

EVIDENCE CODES (EV): BREEDING BIRD - POSSIBLE:

SH = SUITABLE HABITAT

SM = SINGING MALE

BREEDING BIRD - PROBABLE

T = TERRITORY

D = DISPLAY

A = ANXIETY BEHAVIOUR

SI = OTHER SIGNS (specify)

BREEDING BIRD - CONFIRMED:

V = VISITING NEST N = NEST BUILDING

DD = DISTRACTION

NU = USED NEST NE = EGGS NY = YOUNG

FY = FLEDGED YOUNG FS = FOOD/FAECAL SACK

P = PAIR

AE = NEST ENTRY

OTHER WILDLIFE EVIDENCE: OB = OBSERVED

VO = VOCALIZATION HO = HOUSE/DEN

CA = CARCASS FY = EGGS OR YOUNG

DP = DISTINCTIVE PARTS TK = TRACKS FE = FEEDING EVIDENCE

SC = SCAT

Page ...l. of ..l..

References

Literature Cited

- Arnup, R.W. and G. Racey. 1996. First approximation guide to the photointerpretation and mapping of forested ecosites in Northwestern Ontario using black-and-white aerial photographs. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (OMNR), Northwest Region, Northwest Science and Technology, Thunder Bay.
- Avery, T.E. and G.L. Berlin. 1992. Fundamentals of remote sensing and air photo interpretation. MacMillan Publishing Co., New York.
- Bailey, R.G. 1996. Ecosystem Geography. Springer-Verlag, New York Inc.
- Bailey, R.G. 1987. Suggested hierarchy of criteria for multi-scale ecosystem mapping. Landscape Urban Plann. 14:313-319.
- Bailey, R.G. 1983. Delineation of ecosystem regions. Env. Management 7(4):365-373.
- Bailey, R.G. 1980. Description of the ecoregions of the United States. Misc. Pub. No. 1391, US Dep. Agric., For. Serv., Washington, DC.
- Bailey, R.G. 1976. Ecoregions of the United States, Map at 1:7500000 scale. US Dep. Agric., For. Serv., Intermountain Region, Ogden, Utah.
- Bailey, R.G., R.D. Pfister and J.A. Henderson. 1978. Nature of land and resource classification: A review. J. of Forestry 76:650-655.
- Bakowsky, W.D. 1996. Natural heritage resources of Ontario: Vegetation communities of Southern Ontario. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Natural Heritage Information Centre, Peterborough, Ontario.
- Bakowsky, W.D., H.T. Lee and J.L. Riley. In prep. Ecological land classification for Southern Ontario: Catalogue of documented community descriptions. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Natural Heritage Information Centre, Peterborough, Ontario.
- Bastedo, J.D. and J.B. Theberge. 1983. An appraisal of inter-disciplinary resource surveys (Ecological land classification). Landscape Planning, 10: 317-334.
- Brownell, V.R. and B.M.H. Larson. 1995. An evaluation framework for natural areas in the regional municipality of Ottawa-Carleton: Vol. 1. Regional Municipality of Ottawa-Carleton, Ottawa, Ontario.
- Burger, D. 1993. Revised site regions of Ontario: Concepts, methodology and utility. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Ontario Forest Research Institute.
- Burger, D. 1976. The concept of ecosystem region in forest site classification. In Proceedings of the XVIUFRO World Congress (Norway), Div. I. 213-218.
- Burger, D. 1972. Forest site classification in Canada. Mitteil. Vereins f. Forstl. Standortsk. u. Forstpfl. zucht. (Stuttgart) 21:20-36.
- Burger, D. and G. Pierpoint. 1990. Trends in forest site and land classification in Canada. Forestry Chronicle 66:91-96.
- Caboue, M., W.L. Strong, L. Archambault and R.S. Sims. 1996. Terminology of ecological land classification in Canada. Information Report LAU-X-114E. Natural Resources Canada, Canadian Forest Service, Quebec.

- Canada Soil Survey Committee, Subcommittee on Soil Classification. 1978. The Canadian system of soil classification. Can. Dep. Agric., Ottawa, Ontario. Publ. 1646.
- Chambers, B.A. and R.M. Lee. 1992. Central Ontario forest ecosystem classification (COFEC) field data collection manual: Version 1. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Central Ontario Forest Technology Development Unit, North Bay.
- Chambers, B.A., B.J. Naylor, J. Nieppola, B. Merchant and P. Uhlig. 1997. Field guide to forest ecosystems of Central Ontario. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southcentral Science Development and Transfer Branch, SCSS field guide FG-01.
- Chapman, L.J. and D.F. Putnam. 1984. Physiography of southern Ontario. 3rd Edition. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Ontario Geological Survey, Special Vol. 2.
- Corns, I.G.W. and R.M. Annas. 1986. Field guide to forest ecosystems of West-Central Alberta. Can. For. Serv., Edmonton, Alberta.
- Credit Valley Conservation. 1995. Credit watershed natural heritage project terms of reference: Background and approach. Meadowvale. Ontario.
- Credit Valley Conservation. 1998. Credit watershed natural heritage project detailed methodology: Identifying, mapping and collecting field data at a watershed and subwatershed scale, Version 3. Meadowyale, Ontario.
- Cuddy, D.G. 1991. Vascular plants of Eastern Ontario. Draft 2.0. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Kemptville, Ontario.
- Curtis, J.T. 1959. The vegetation of Wisconsin: An ordination of plant communities. The University of Wisconsin Press.
- Daigle, J.M. and D. Havinga. 1996. Restoring nature's place: A naturalization program for Ontario parks and greenspace. Ecological Outlook Consulting and Ontario Parks Association, Schomberg, Ontario.
- Day, R.T., P.A. Keddy, J. McNeill and T. Carleton. 1988. Fertility and disturbance gradients: A summary model for riverine marsh vegetation. Ecology 69:1044-1054.
- Environmental Conservation Service Task Force. 1981. Ecological land survey guidelines for environmental impact analysis. Ecological Land Classification Series, No. 13. Lands Directorate, Environment Canada, Ottawa.
- Grime, J.P. 1979. Plant strategies and vegetation processes. Wiley, Chichester.
- Halliday, W.E.D. 1937. A forest classification for Canada. Canada Dept. Mines and Resources. For. Service Bull. 89.
- Harris, L.D. 1984. The fragmented forest. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago.
- Harris, A.G., S.C. McMurray, P.W. Uhlig, J.K.Jeglum, R.F. Foster and G.D. Racey. 1996. Fleld guide to the wetland ecosystem classification for Northwestern Ontario. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Northwest Science and Technology, Field Guide FG-01.
- Hills, G.A. 1976. An integrated iterative holistic approach to ecosystem classification. In J. Thie and G. Ironside (eds.). Ecological (biophysical) land classification in Canada. Environment Canada, Ecological Land Classification Series 1.
- Hills, G.A. 1961. The ecological basis for land-use planning. Ontario Dep. Lands and Forest, Res. Br., Research Report 46.

- Hills, G.A. 1960. Regional site research. Forestry Chronicle 36:401-423.
- Hills, G.A. 1959. A ready reference to the description of the land of Ontario and its productivity. Ontario Department of Lands and Forests.
- Hills, G.A. 1958. Soil-forest relationships in the site regions of Ontario. In Proceedings of the first North American forest soil conference, Michigan State University, East Lansing.
- Hills, G.A. 1952. The classification and evaluation of site for forestry. Ontario Department of Lands and Forests, Report No. 24.
- Hilts, S. and T.C. Moull. 1990. The natural heritage stewardship program. In G.M. Allen, P.F.J. Eagles and S.T. Price (eds.). Conserving Carolinian Canada: Conservation biology in the deciduous forest region. University of Waterloo Press, Waterloo, Ontario.
- Hough Stansbury Woodland Naylor Dance Limited and Gore & Storrie Ltd. 1994. Ecological restoration opportunities for the Lake Ontario greenway. Waterfront Regeneration Trust, Toronto.
- Hummel, M. (ed.). 1995. Protecting Canada's endangered spaces. Key Porter Books Limited, Toronto.
- Hutchinson, B.E. 1975. A treatise on limnology, III: Aquatic macrophytes and attached algae. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York.
- Jalava, J.V., J.L. Riley, D.G. Cuddy and W.J. Crins. 1997. Natural heritage resources of Ontario: revised site districts in ecological site regions 6E and 7E, Part I: rationale and methodology. Natural Heritage Information Centre, Ministry of Natural Resources, Peterborough.
- Jalava, J. and H. Godschalk. 1998. Priority sites for conservation action in the Niagara Escarpment biosphere reserve. In D. Ramsay, S. Carty, R. Murzin and S.Powell (eds.). Leading edge '97 – The edge and the point, October 16-18, 1997. Conference Proceedings (in press).
- Jeglum, J.K., A.N. Boissonneau and V.F. Haavisto. 1974. Toward a wetland classification for Ontario. Can. For. Serv., Dept. Env. Information Report 0-X-215.
- Jones, R.K., G. Pierpoint, G.M. Wickware, J.K. Jeglum, R.W. Arnup and J.M. Bowles. 1983. Field guide to forest ecosystem classification for the Clay Belt, site region 3e. Agriculture Canada, Environment Canada and Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources.
- Kavanagh, K. 1990. A classification of the natural communities occurring in Ontario site region 7E, the Carolinian zone. In Carolinian Canada conservation data centre project: A report to the Ministry of Natural Resources. Volume 1. The Nature Conservancy of Canada.
- Keddy, P.A. and A.A. Reznicek. 1986. Great Lakes vegetation dynamics: The role of fluctuating water levels and buried seeds. J. Great Lakes Research 12:25-36.
- Klinka, K., J. Pojar and D.V. Meidinger. 1991. Revision of biogeoclimatic units of coastal British Columbia. Northwest Science 65:32-47.
- Kotar, J., J.A. Kovach and C.T. Locey. 1988. Field guide to forest habitat types of Northern Wisconsin. The Department of Forestry, University of Wisconsin in Madison and the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources.

- Krajina, V.J. 1965. Biogeoclimatic zones and classification of British Columbia. Eco. West. N.A. 1:1-17. Dept. of Botany, U.B.C., Vancouver.
- Lee, H.T. In prep. Ecological land classification for Southern Ontario: Community factsheets. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southcentral Region, Science Development and Transfer Branch. Technical Manual ELC-007.
- Lee, H.T. and C.L. Brand. 1993. Catalogue of ecological reports for southern region: 1913-1993. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southern Region, Science and Technology Transfer Unit.
- Lee, H.T. 1993. Ecological land classification (ELC): Southern region draft prospectus.
 Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southern Region, Science and Technology
 Transfer Unit.
- Maycock, P.F. 1979. A preliminary survey of the vegetation of Ontario as a basis for the establishment of a comprehensive nature reserve system. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Provincial Parks Branch, Toronto. 2 vols.
- Maycock, P.F. 1963. The phytosociology of the deciduous forest of extreme Southern Ontario. Can. J. Bot. 41:379-438.
- McCarthy, T.G., R.W. Arnup, J. Nieppola, B.G. Merchant, K.C. Taylor and W.J. Parton. 1994. Field guide to forest ecosystems of Northeastern Ontario. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, NEST Field Guide FG-001.
- Meades, W.J. and B.A. Roberts. 1992. A review of forest site classification activities in Newfoundland and Labrador. The Forestry Chronicle 68(1):25-33.

- Meidinger, D. and J. Pojar (eds.). 1991. Ecosystems of British Columbia. B.C. Ministry of Forests, Victoria, B.C., Special Report Series 6.
- Merchant, B.G., R.D. Baldwin, E.P. Taylor, B.A. Chambers, A.M. Gordon and R.K. Jones. 1989. Field guide to a productivity-oriented pine forest ecosystem classification for the Algonquin region, site region 5E. First approximation. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Toronto. Unpublished Report.
- Mueller-Dombois, D. and H. Ellenberg. 1974. Aims and methods of vegetation ecology. John Wiley and Sons, Toronto.
- National Vegetation Working Group. 1990. The Canadian vegetation classification system. National Vegetation Working Group of the Canada Committee on Ecological Land Classification. W.L. Strong, E.T. Oswald and D.J. Downing eds. Ecological Land Classification Series, No. 25, Sustainable Development, Corporate Policy Group, Environment Canada, Ottawa, Canada.
- Nelson, P.W. 1987. The terrestrial natural communities of Missouri. Missouri Natural Areas Committee.
- Nixon, B.K., and G.S. Whitelaw. 1994. Ecosystem planning: From theory to implementation. In Puddister, M.J. and M.P. Nelischer (eds.). 1994. Ecosystem protection in an urbanizing environment: Innovations in planning and design. Seminar Proceedings, Credit Valley Conservation, Meadowvale, Ontario.
- Oldham, M.J. 1993. Distribution and status of the vascular plants of Southwestern Ontario. Ministry of Natural Resources, Aylmer, Ontario.

- Oldham, M.J., W.D. Bakowsky and D.A. Sutherland. 1995. Floristic quality assessment system for Southern Ontario. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Natural Heritage Information Centre, Peterborough, Ontario.
- OMNR (Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources). 1998. Natural heritage reference manual For Policy 2.3 of the Provincial Policy Statement. OMNR, Peterborough, Ontario.
- OMNR. In prep. Silvicultural guide to managing southern Ontario hardwood forests. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southcentral Science Section, Technical Report.
- OMNR. 1977. A ready reference. OMNR, Ontario Land Inventory (Draft).
- Ontario Institute of Pedology. 1985. Field manual for describing soils, Third edition. Ontario Institute of Pedology, Guelph, Ontario.
- Ontario Centre for Soil Resource Evaluation. 1993. Field manual for describing soils in Ontario. 4th Edition. Ontario Centre for Soil Resource Evaluation. Publication No. 93-1
- Pierpoint, B. 1964. Where are we in soil-site classification? In Application of soil information in forestry. State University College of Forestry at Syracuse University and New York State College of Agriculture at Cornell University. Misc. Pub. 33-42.
- Pojar, J., K. Klinka and D.V. Meidinger. 1987. Biogeoclimatic ecosystem classification in British Columbia. Forest Ecology and Management 22:119-154.
- Poser, S.F., W.J. Crins and T.J. Beechey (eds.). 1993. Size and integrity standards for natural heritage areas in Ontario. Proceedings of a Seminar, Parks and Natural Heritage Policy Branch, Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Huntsville, Ontario.
- Province of Ontario. 1997. Provincial Policy Statement. Queens Printer for Ontario, Toronto.
- Puddister, M.J. and M.P. Nelischer (eds.). 1994. Ecosystem protection in an urbanizing environment: Innovations in planning and design. Seminar Proceedings, Credit Valley Conservation. Meadowvale. Ontario.
- Racey, G.D., T.S. Whitfield and R.A. Sims. 1989. Northwestern Ontario forest ecosystem interpretations. Forestry Canada and Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Thunder Bay, Ontario. NWOFTDU Technical Report No. 46.
- Racey, G.D., A.G. Harris, J.K. Jeglum, R.F. Foster and G.M. Wickware. 1996. Terrestrial and wetland ecosites of Northwestern Ontario. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Northwest Science and Technology, Field Guide FG-02.
- Reschke, C. 1990. Ecological communities of New York State. New York State Department of Environmental Conservation.
- Riley, J.L. 1989. Distribution and status of the vascular plants of Central Region. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Parks and Recreational Areas Section, Central Region, Richmond Hill, Ontario.
- Riley, J.L. and P. Mohr. 1994. The natural heritage of Southern Ontario's settled landscapes: A review of conservation and restoration ecology for land-use and landscape planning. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Southern Region, Aurora, Science and Technology Transfer, Technical Report TR-001.
- Riley, J.L., J.V. Jalava, M.J. Oldham and H.G. Godschalk. 1998. Natural heritage resources of Ontario: Bibliography of life science areas of natural and scientific interest in

- ecological site regions 6E and 7E, Southern Ontario. OMNR, Natural Heritage Information Centre, Peterborough, Ontario.
- Rowe, J.S. 1972. Forest regions of Canada. Canadian Forestry Service, Publication No.
- Rowe, J.S. 1971. Why classify forest land? Forestry Chronicle 47:144-148.
- Rowe, J.S. 1962. Soil, site and land classification. Forestry Chronicle 38:420-432.
- Rowe, J.S. and J.W. Sheard. 1981. Ecological land classification: A survey approach. Env. Management 5(5):451-464.
- Sims, R.A. 1992. Forest site classification in Canada: A current perspective. Forestry Canada, Sciences and Sustainable Development Directorate, Ottawa, Ontario.
- Sims, R.A. and P.W. Uhlig. 1992. The current status of forest site classification in Ontario. Forestry Chronicle 68(1):64-76.
- Sims, R.A., W.D. Towill, K.A. Baldwin and G.M. Wickware. 1989. Field ecosystem classification for Northwestern Ontario. Forestry Canada and Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Thunder Bay, Ontario.
- Soper, J.H. and M.L. Heimburger. 1982. Shrubs of Ontario. Royal Ontario Museum, Toronto, Ontario.

- Uhlig, P.W. and J. Baker. 1994. Provincial ecological land classification program prospectus. Forest Research Report No. 112, Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Sault Ste. Marie, Ontario.
- Van der Valk, A.G. 1981. Succession in wetlands: A Gleasonian approach. Ecology 62:688-696.
- Waterfront Regeneration Trust. 1995. Restoring natural habitats: A manual for habitat restoration in the Greater Toronto bioregion. Waterfront Regeneration Trust, Toronto.
- Wickware, G.M. and C.D.A. Rubec. 1989a. Terrestrial ecoregions and ecodistricts of Ontario. Map and descriptive table. In Ecoregions of Ontario. Ecological Land Classification Series, No. 26. Sustainable Development Branch, Environment Canada, Ottawa, Ontario.
- Wickware, G.M. and C.D.A. Rubec. 1989b. Ecoregions of Ontario. Ecological Land Classification Series, No. 26. Sustainable Development Branch, Environment Canada, Ottawa, Ontario.
- Wiken, E. 1986. Terrestrial ecozones of Canada. Ecological Land Classification Series, No. 19. Lands Directorate, Environment Canada, Ottawa, Ontario.
- Zoltai, S.C. and D.H. Vitt. 1995. Canadian wetlands: Environmental gradients and classification. Vegetation 118:131-137.

Glossarv²

- abiotic Describing the non-living components of an ecosystem.
- abundance-dominance An expression of the number of individuals of a plant species and their coverage in a phytosociological survey.
- abundant Referring to a plant that is represented throughout the polygon or community by large numbers of individuals or clumps. Likely to be encountered anywhere in the polygon. Usually forming > 10% ground cover.
- acidic, acid Having a pH value of < 7.0; (soil) pH values of < 6.5 within the surface horizons.
- acidic bedrock Igneous rocks containing > 66% silica, have low pH and are not easily weathered.
- aeolian (eolian) Referring to mineral particles moved and sorted by wind, usually fine sands and coarse silt. See dune.
- aerobic Occurring in the presence of oxygen as applied to chemical and biochemical processes; opposite of anaerobic.
- alkaline Having a pH value of > 7.0; (soil) in the Canadian System of Soil Classification, for soil taxonomy purposes: a pH value > 7.4. See acidic.
- alluvium Mineral material deposited by flowing water, usually sands, silts and gravels.
- alvar Bedrock-controlled sites on more or less level expanses of limestone. There is a patchy mosaic of exposed limestone "pavement" and scant soil which mainly accumulates in cracks or "grykes". There is seasonal inundation of water alternating with extreme drought in summer.
- anaerobic Occurring in the absence of oxygen as applied to chemical and biochemical processes.
- angiosperm A flowering vascular plant bearing seeds enclosed in a carpel. The most advanced, most abundant and most widely distributed plants. Angiosperm trees are also called hardwoods.
- anthropogenic Human-made or human-modified materials or communities, such that their initial properties or characteristics have been drastically altered.
- aquatic Living or growing in water; referring to ecosites that are in water generally > 2 m deep and that have less than 25% emergent vegetation.
- arable land Land cultivated or suitable for cultivation.
- arid Soil, climate or region where vegetation may not grow due to a severe lack of water.
- aspect The orientation of a slope face, expressed using a compass direction.
- associate(s) One or more plant species that commonly occur together, typically under similar ecological conditions.

- backshore The area immediately above the zone normally affected by wave action along a lake.
- barren Usually open sites on bedrock or unconsolidated material, such as sand, where the major limiting factor is drought. Stunted trees and tall shrubs may be present but tallgrass prairie species are not.
- basal area. The area occupied by a plant near the ground surface; measured across the stem of a tree 1.3 to 1.5 m above the ground surface, or across a clump of graminoids, usually 2 to 3 cm above the ground surface.
- basic bedrock Igneous rocks containing ≤ 66% silica, have circumneutral pH and are intermediate in weatherability.
- beach / bar A shoreline area of a lake or river with high levels of disturbance from periodic high water levels and related physical effects such as ice scour, erosion and deposition.
- bedrock The consolidated rock underlying very shallow soils and the regolith or exposed rock at the surface.
- biodiversity Totality of the richness of biological variation, ranging from within-species genetic variation, through subspecies and species, to communities and the patterns and dynamics of these on the landscape.
- biomass. The mass of living organisms within a defined space, usually expressed in kg/ha or g/m² of dry matter.
- biome Major biotic community composed of all the plants and animals and smaller biotic communities. The smaller communities in a biome possess similarities in gross external appearances (deciduous trees, grasslands, etc.) and gross climatic conditions (desert, tropical, etc.). A particular biome is defined in terms of the characteristic vegetation forms (or life forms).
- biota The living component of an ecosystem.
- biotic Pertaining to life.
- bluff A shoreline area of a river or lake with steep to vertical slopes of unconsolidated surficial deposits which are subject to active erosion from slumping, mass wasting or toe erosion.
- bog Ombrotrophic peatlands, generally unaffected by nutrient-rich groundwater, that are acidic and often dominated by heath shrubs and Sphagnum mosses and that may include open-growing, stunted trees.
- bottomland The area in the bottom of a river valley. It includes the floodplain, but may extend beyond the limit of flooding to the base of the valley slopes.
- boulder Rock fragment over 60 cm in diameter. In engineering, practice boulders are over 20 cm in diameter.
- broad-leaved Plants with wide leaves (c.f. graminoid). Also a general term referring to angiosperm (hardwood) trees.
- brown moss A non-taxonomic division of mosses including Campylium stellatum, Scorpidium scorpioides and Tomenthypnum nitens.
- calcicole Species that demonstrate a preference for growth in calcium-rich soils with a neutral pH.

²Cauboue et al. (1996) was the primary source for this Glossary of ELC terms.

- canopy The aerial branches of terrestrial plants, together with their complement of leaves. Said to be a complete canopy when the ground is completely hidden by leaves when viewed from above.
- canopy closure The degree of canopy cover relative to openings.
- carbonate bedrock Sedimentary rocks made up largely of carbonate minerals (release carbon dioxide upon heating), have high pH values and are easily weathered.
- characteristic species Diagnostic species used to separate plant community types. Characteristic species may occur in more than one community, but are significant (much more abundant) in only one community. A species with high cover (abundance) and presence.
- chronosequence A sequence through time. It often is used to refer to a secondary successional sequence within a set of plant communities.
- classification The systematic grouping and organization of objects, usually in a hierarchical manner.
- classification unit A synthetic unit resulting from the grouping of sample plots that share similar ecological characteristics.
- clay Mineral particles < 0.002 mm in diameter. Soil texture class with approximately a 40 to 60% composition of clay-size particles.
- cliff A steep, or near-vertical, exposure of bed rock > 3 m high. The vegetation community associated with a vertical rock face, including communities with shallow soils near the edge of the exposure.
- climate The accumulated long-term effects of weather that involve a variety of heat and moisture exchange processes between the earth and the atmosphere.

climatic climax See climax.

- climax Stable, self-perpetuating vegetation that represents the final stage of succession.
- climatic climax Stable, self-perpetuating vegetation developed through succession in response to long-term climatic conditions.
- edaphic climax Stable, self-perpetuating vegetation developed through succession on sites where soil factors are limiting.
- cobble A rounded rock fragment between 80 and 250 mm in diameter.
- co-dominant Two or more plant species of similar stature that share more or less equally the greatest importance in a vegetation layer.
- community An assemblage of organisms that exist and interact with one another on the same site.
- community type A group of similar vegetation stands that share common characteristics of vegetation, structure and soils.
- competition The interaction among organisms resulting from common use of a limited resource. Intraspecific competition occurs within the same species, while interspecific competition arises among different species.
- complex Pattern of two or more ecosites or vegetation types forming a mosaic that cannot be mapped at the level of resolution being employed.

- conifer A cone-bearing plant belonging to the taxonomic group Gymnospermae.

 coniferous Referring to a conifer. A plant community with a cover made up of 75% or more
- cover The area of ground covered or the relative proportion of coverage a particular plant species, vegetation layer or plant form represents. Can be expressed as relative or absolute cover values.
- cover scale A set of discrete classes defined by specific percentages that are used to estimate plant cover.
- cover type A very general unit of vegetation classification and mapping based on existing plant cover (e.g., closed-canopied deciduous forest, pasture or native prairie).
- cultural community A vegetation community originating from, or maintained by, anthropogenic influences and culturally based disturbances; often containing a large proportion of non-native species.
- **dbh (diameter at breast height)** The diameter of a tree at breast height. Diameter is measured at 1.3 to 1.5 m above ground surface.
- deciduous Referring to perennial plants from which the leaves abscise and fall off at the end of the growing season.
- deciduous forest A plant community with a cover made up of 75% or more deciduous trees.
- deposit See surficial deposit.

coniferous species.

- depression. An area that is lower than the general surrounding landscape, usually less well drained than the surrounding terrain.
- dicot A group of angiosperm plants containing all the flowering plants that have embryos with two cotyledons or seed leaves. Also distinguished from monocots in having broad leaves with branching veins.
- diversity The richness of species within a given area. Diversity includes two distinct concepts: richness of species and evenness in the abundances of the species.
- dominant A plant with the greatest cover or biomass within a plant community and represented throughout the community by large numbers of individuals. Visually more abundant than other species in the same layer and forming > 10% of the ground cover and > 35% of the vegetation cover in any one layer.
- drainage The removal of excess water from soil as a result of gravitational flow. Drainage may not be possible if the water table occurs near the ground surface, or may be impeded if the soil is composed of fine-textured material.
- drawdown Decrease in water level of lakes or streams, exposing a substrate that is usually submerged.
- dune A low hill or ridge of sand that has been sorted and deposited by wind.
- ecoclimatic region. An area characterized by a distinctive regional climate as expressed by vegetation. Equivalent to a domain.
- ecodistrict A subdivision of an ecoregion based on distinct assemblages of relief, geology, landform, soils, vegetation, water and fauna. Canadian ecological land classification

- (ELC) system unit. Scale 1:500 000 to 1:125 000. The subdivision is based on distinct physiographic or geological patterns. Originally referred to as a land or site district.
- ecoelement The lowest classification level within the Canadian ecological land classification (ELC) system proposed by the Subcommittee on Biophysical Land Classification in 1969. but not included in the original hierarchy. A subdivision of an ecosite displaying uniform soil, topography, vegetation and hydrology. Scale 1:10 000 to 1:2 500.
- ecological factor. Any element of the site that can possibly influence living organisms (e.g., water available for plants). This term is also frequently used to refer to ecological descriptors.
- Ecological Land Classification (ELC) The Canadian classification of lands from an ecological perspective; an approach that attempts to identify ecologically similar areas. The original system proposed by the Subcommittee on Biophysical Land Classification in 1969 included four hierarchical levels that are currently called ecoregion, ecodistrict, ecosection and ecosite. Ecoprovince and ecoelement were later added to the upper and lower levels of the hierarchy.
- ecological unit. A very general term used to refer to a mapping or classification unit of any rank and based on ecological criteria.
- ecology The science that studies the living conditions of living beings and all types of interactions that take place among living beings and between living beings and their environment.
- ecoprovince A subdivision of an ecozone (see Table 1) that is characterized by major assemblages of landforms, faunal realms and vegetation, hydrological, soil and climatic zones. Canadian ecological land classification (ELC) system unit.
- ecoregion. An area characterized by a distinctive regional climate as expressed by vegetation. Canadian ecological land classification (ELC) system unit. Scale 1:3 000 000 to 1:1 000 000. Originally referred to as a land or site region.
- ecosection A subdivision of an ecodistrict based on distinctive assemblages of relief. geology, landforms, soils and vegetation. A Canadian ecological land classification (ELC) system mapping unit, usually mapped at a scale of 1:250 000 to 1:50 000.
- ecosite A subdivision of an ecosection that consists of an area of land having a hom ogeneous combination of soils and vegetation. A Canadian ecological land classification (ELC) system mapping unit, usually mapped at a scale of 1:50 000 to 1:10 000.
- ecosystem A complex interacting system that includes all plants, animals, fungi and microorganisms and their environment within a particular area at whatever size segment of the world is chosen for study.
- ecotone The transition zone between two adjacent but different types of vegetation.
- ecozone An area of the earth's surface representing large and very generalized ecological units characterized by interacting abiotic and biotic factors. The most general level of the Canadian ecological land classification (ELC) system.
- edaphic Having to do with the soil, particularly with respect to its influences on vegetation. edaphic climax See climax.

emergent A plant that has a photosynthetic surface extending above the normal water level. Plants that are floating-leaved or submergent but have reproductive stems above the water surface are not emergent. environment The summation of all living and non-living factors that surround and potentially influence an organism. eolian See aeolian. erosion The degradation of a surface by chemical and mechanical weathering, and the removal of materials by wind or water. eutrophic Refers to the rich nutrient-rich status of a water body. even-aged A forest, stand or forest type in which relatively small age differences exist among individual trees. exposure Location of a site with respect to an environmental factor such as the sun, rain or fauna A general term for animals; a list of the animal species present in an area. feathermoss A non-taxonomic division of mosses that includes Hylocomium splendens, Pleurozium schreberi and Ptilium crista-castrensis. feature. In the ELC data management system, a unit that describes the topographic, landform or cultural position of an ecosite. fen Wetland with a peat substrate and nutrient-rich waters, and primarily vegetated by shrubs and graminoids. animals, plant communities, forest types or sites from biological and physical criteria.

- field guide A reference document for use in the field, usually with keys to identify plants,
- floating-leaved A wetland plant that has its major photosynthetic area floating on the surface of the water. Some floating-leaved plants are rooted in the substrate while the leaves float; in other species the whole plant is completely free-floating, with no attachments.
- floodplain An area adjacent to a stream or river, consisting of alluvial sediments, that may be periodically inundated during times of high stream flow.
- flora A general term for plants; the entire complement of the plant species growing spontaneously in a region.
- floristics The use of plants as elements of flora.
- forb Originally a pasture herb; a non-woody, broad-leaved herbaceous plant other than a graminoid. A forb may be either a monocot or a dicot (e.g., Maianthemum is a forb).
- foreshore The zone between low and high water levels.
- forest A terrestrial vegetation community with at least 60% tree cover.
- forest region A major geographical zone characterized by a broadly uniform topography and the same dominant tree species. See site region.

- gley A blue-grey colour in soil due to the reduction of iron. Formed in a process characterized by low oxygen conditions due to water logging. If the water logging is seasonal rather than permanent, the periodic oxidation will give rise to mottles.
- graminoid Grass-like. Generic term for narrow-leaved monocot plants with a grass-like morphology, including grasses, sedges and rushes.
- gravel Rock particles ranging in size from 2 mm to 8 cm in diameter; soil with a high proportion of gravel-sized particles.
- ground cover The overall canopy cover of a plant community without reference to different strata
- ground layer. The layer of vegetation closest to, and covering, the ground.
- groundwater Water passing through, or standing in, soil and underlying strata and free to move by gravity.
- habitat The place in which an animal or plant lives. The sum of environmental circumstances in the place inhabited by an organism, population or community.
- hardwood An angiosperm tree with broad leaves, such as Acer, Fraxinus, Populus and Quercus. See broad-leaved.
- herb (herbaceous) A non-woody, vascular plant.
- herpetofauna Reptiles and amphibians.
- horizon A layer of soil (e.g., Ah, B,C).
- hydric A general term for soils that develop under conditions of poor drainage in marshes, swamps, seepage areas or flats.
- hydrophyte, hydrophitic plant Any plant able to grow normally in water or on a substrate at least periodically deficient in oxygen as a result of excessive water content.
- indicator species Species, usually plants, used to indicate an ecological condition such as soil moisture or nutrient regime that may not be directly measured.
- inventory The systematic survey, sampling, classification and mapping of natural resources.
- kettle A depression created by the melting of glacial ice that was buried in moraine.
- key A taxonomic tool used to identify unknown objects (e.g., plants or plant communities) through the use of paired questions.
- **lacustrine** Referring to fresh water lakes; sediments generally consisting of stratified fine sand, silt and clay deposits on a lake bed.
- lake A standing water body > 2 ha in area.
- landform A topographic feature. The various shapes of the land surface resulting from a variety of actions such as deposition or sedimentation, erosion and movements of the earth crust.
- land type An area of land characterized by its drainage and deposits (nature, origin, thickness, texture and stoniness). See soil type.

- landscape A land area composed of interacting ecosystems that are repeated in similar form throughout. Landscapes can vary in size, down to a few kilometers in diameter.
- landscape ecology A study of the structure, function and change in a heterogeneous land area composed of interacting ecosystems.
- landscape element The basic, relatively homogeneous ecological unit, whether of natural or human origin, on land at the scale of a landscape.
- layer A component of structure; a distinct stratum within a plant community, soil or surficial deposit.
- level Referring to land without slope.
- level of resolution Scale of space perception. The ecological factors change according to the level perceived.
- life form Morphological and biological organization of a plant in relation to the way it spends the unfavorable season for growing.
- litter The uppermost portion of plant debris on the soil surface, usually not decomposed.
- lowland Extended areas of land that occur below a significantly elevated area.
- mapping unit See Polygon
- marsh A wetland with a mineral or peat substrate inundated by nutrient-rich water and characterized by emergent vegetation.
- mature A seral stage in which a community is dominated primarily by species that are replacing themselves and are likely to remain an important component of the community if it is not disturbed again. Significant remnants of early seral stages may still be present.
- meadow Open terrestrial communities characterized by grasses or forbs; usually originating or maintained by cultural disturbances such as mowing, burning or grazing.
- meadow marsh An area at the wetland-terrestrial interface, which is seasonally inundated with water and usually dominated by grasses or forbs.
- mesic Describing the sites that are neither humid (hydric) nor very dry (xeric). The average moisture conditions for a given climate.
- mesophyte Plants that grow in mesic soil moisture conditions.
- microclimate Localized climatic conditions ranging down to conditions at the stand or even individual plant environment level.
- microtopography Usually, small localized differences in elevation (e.g., < 1 m of relief).
- mid-aged A seral stage of a community that has undergone natural thinning and replacement as a result of species interaction; the community often contains examples of both early successional and late successional species.
- mineral soil A soil that is largely composed of unconsolidated mineral matter. If organic material occurs on the surface, the organic thickness must be < 40 cm.
- minerotrophic Nourished by mineral water. It refers to wetlands that receive nutrients from mineral groundwater in addition to precipitation by flowing or percolating water.

- mixed A plant community with a mixed composition of plants having a similar stature, each component with a cover of > 25% but < 75%.
- moisture deficit A condition that occurs when evaporation or transpiration exceeds the available water supply.
- moisture regime The available moisture supply for plant growth estimated in relative or absolute terms; classifications for moisture regimes come from the integration of several factors, including soil texture and drainage, and depth to mottles and gley.
- monocot A group of angiosperms distinguished by having embryos with only one cotyledon. Very few of its members have a tree-growth form. The leaves are generally narrow with parallel veins and the root system is typically fibrous. Monocots include grasses, sedges, rushes and all members of the lily family.
- moraine A mound, ridge or other distinct accumulation of generally unsorted, unstratified glacial drift, predominantly till, deposited chiefly by direct action of glacier ice.
- mottle Spots or blotches of different colours or shades of colours interspersed with the dominant colour, usually the result of alternating aerobic and anaerobic soil conditions and indicative of poor drainage. The depth of mottles in soils of different types is a diagnostic indication of moisture regime.
- neutral soil A soil having a pH value of approximately 7.0 in the surface horizons.
- nutrient Usually refers to one of a specific set of primary elements found in soil that are required by plants for healthy growth, such as nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, calcium, magnesium and sulphur.
- nutrient regime The relative level of nutrient availability for plant growth.
- occasional Referring to plants that are present as scattered individuals throughout a community or represented by one or more large clumps of many individuals. Most species will fall into this category.
- old field A general term to describe early successional communities that have regenerated from abandoned agricultural land.
- old growth A self-perpetuating community composed primarily of late successional species that usually show uneven age distribution, including large old trees without open-grown characteristics.
- oligotrophic A condition of low nutrient status in a wetland or water body.
- open Referring to wetland or terrestrial communities that have < 10% tree cover and < 25% shrub cover.
- open-grown The form of a tree grown in an open area: a wide crown and low branching.
- open water Aquatic communities in which the permanent water is generally > 2 m deep and the total vegetation cover is > 25%.
- organic soil Soils of the Organic order in the Canadian System of Soil Classification, dominated by deep organic deposits, usually > 40 cm thick.
- outcrop Exposure of bedrock at the ground surface.
- **overstorey** The uppermost continuous layer of a vegetation cover (e.g., the tree canopy in a forest ecosystem or the uppermost layer of a shrub stand).

- parent material The unconsolidated and more or less chemically unweathered material from which soil develops.
- patch In a landscape, a non-linear surface area differing in appearance from its surroundings.
- peat An accumulation, under saturated conditions, of partially decomposed plant matter.
- peatland A general term for peat-covered terrain.
- perturbation Disturbance in the natural evolution of vegetation, soil or another element in the ecosystem. A perturbation can be natural (fire, epidemic) or human-made (cutting, mowing).
- pH A measure of acidity or alkalinity of a solution, based on the concentration of hydrogen ions.
- physiognomy The general appearance, character, form and feature of vegetation.
- physiographic region Topographically similar landscapes with similar relief, structural geology and elevation at a mapping scale of 1:1,000,000 to 1:3,000,000.
- physiography The study of the genesis and evolution of landform.
- phytosociological Referring to a recognizable and repeatable community of interacting plant species that occurs across a landscape under the same conditions.
- pioneer community A community that has invaded disturbed or newly created sites and represents the early stages of either primary or secondary succession.
- pioneer species Plant species that initially invade a newly exposed land surface.
- plain A relatively large, level, featureless topographic surface.
- plankton Microscopic organisms suspended in water. Some photosynthetic plankton, such as algae, occurs in such large numbers that they form visible "blooms" on the water surface.
- **plantation** A deciduous or coniferous treed community in which the majority of trees have been planted.
- plant community A concrete or real unit of vegetation or a stand of vegetation.
- plot A vegetation sampling unit used to delineate a fixed area for the purpose of estimating plant cover, biomass or density. Plots can vary in their dimensions depending on the purpose of the study.
- polygon A discrete and unique irregularly shaped area outlined on a map or air-photo that contains a more or less homogeneous site and differs from the adjacent and surrounding land.
- pond A small body of standing water, < 2 ha in area.
- prairie An area of native grassland controlled by a combination of moisture deficiency and fire. Usually containing a distinctive assemblage of species.
- precipitation A collective term for snowfall and rainfall.
- primary succession See succession.

pristine An undisturbed natural condition.

rare An assessment of cover or abundance of a plant species that is represented, in the area of interest, by only one to a few individuals.

ravine A relatively deep, steep-sided gully created by flowing water, usually a small intermittent creek.

regeneration The renewal of woody species by natural or artificial means.

relief The difference between extreme elevations within a given area.

remote sensing The gathering and interpretation of land-based information by indirect methods such as aerial photography or satellite imagery.

riparian Having to do with a river. In the ELC, refers to aquatic communities adjacent to, or associated with, a river or stream as opposed to a lake or pond (c.f. lacustrine).

river A large, permanent water course with at least some permanent tributary streams.

rock A consolidated mass of mineral matter; a general term for stones.

rockland An area where more or less horizontal or rolling surfaces of bedrock are exposed or covered by soil < 15 cm deep.</p>

rolling Referring to topography that exhibits a complex or repeated pattern of ridges, slopes and hollows, but no abrupt peaks or cliffs.

sand Mineral particles with diameters ranging from 0.05 to 2.0 mm.

saturate(d) Describing a soil or a soil sample where all the voids between soil particles are filled with a liquid.

savannah A treed community with 11 to 35% cover of coniferous or deciduous trees.

scale A relative term that indicates a map reference fraction (i.e., 1 cm = 10 m or 1:1,000).

- large-scale map Maps with scales between 1:10,000 and 1:1,000 or more are usually
 considered large-scale maps.
- small-scale map Maps with scales between 1:5,000,000 and 1:250,000 are usually considered small-scale maps.

scree See talus.

secondary succession. See succession.

seepage The slow movement of water near the soil surface, often occurring above an impermeable subsoil layer or at the boundary between bedrock and unconsolidated material that is exposed at ground surface. Usually occurs downslope of the recharge area.

sere Any plant community in a succession leading to a climax condition. It is influenced by the preceding seres and itself influences the development of succeeding seres. See successional stage.

shade intolerant. Plants not capable of growing successfully in shade.

shade tolerant. Plants capable of growing and successfully reproducing beneath the shading canopy of other species.

- shallow marsh Vegetation communities with a water table that rarely drops below the substrate surface and a vegetation composed primarily of broad-leaved or narrow-leaved emergent species.
- shallow water Aquatic communities in which the permanent water is generally < 2 m deep and in which there is a vegetation cover of > 25% composed mainly of submerged or floating-leaved species.
- shrub 1. A perennial plant usually with a woody stem, shorter than a tree, often with a multistemmed base; includes small trailing woody species such as *Rubus pubescens*. Native shrubs of Ontario are listed in Soper and Heimburger (1982). 2. Vegetation communities that have < 10% cover of trees and > 25% cover of shrubs.
- silt Mineral particles with a diameter of 0.05 to 0.002 mm. Soil containing a high proportion of silt.
- site The place or the category of places, considered from an environmental perspective, that determines the type and quality of plants that can grow there.

site district. See ecodistrict.

site region A region with a relatively uniform climate. Equivalent to an ecoregion.

- soil Unconsolidated mineral material or organic material > 15 cm thick that occurs at the earth's surface, has undergone soil formation processes, usually exhibits a distinct soil profile and is capable of supporting plant growth. It is the zone where the biological, physical and atmospheric components of the environment interact.
- soil map Map of soil types, resulting from a soil survey.
- soil profile A vertical section of the soil through all its horizons and extending into parent material.
- soil survey The systematic classification, analysis and mapping of soils within an area.
- soil type A general classification of soil, taking moisture regime, soil depth and texture into consideration.
- species A group of organisms having a common ancestry, which are able to reproduce only among themselves. A general definition that does not account for hybridization.
- stand A collection of plants having a relatively uniform composition and structure.
- stand structure A quantitative measure of tree cover on an area, in terms of biomass, crown closure, number of trees, basal area, volume or weight. Expressed on a perhectare basis.
- stone Rock fragment with a diameter ranging from 25 to 60 cm.
- storey A horizontal layer in a plant community; in the forest appearing as one or more canopies.
- stratification The vertical differentiation or structure of a plant community, soil or surficial deposit.

stratum See Layer

stream A permanent or intermittent water course.

submergent Plants that normally lie entirely beneath water. Some species have flowering parts that break the water surface. Includes species of Potomogeton, which have both submerged and floating leaves.

substrate The medium on which a plant grows.

- succession The progression within a community whereby one plant species is replaced by another over time.
- Primary succession occurs on newly created surfaces.
- Secondary succession involves the development or replacement of one stable successional species by another. Secondary succession occurs on a site after a disturbance (fire, cutting, etc.) in existing communities.
- successional series All the plant communities that can be present on the same site through time, and that result from the combined action of climate, soil and perturbations. Depending on the type of perturbation, succession of plant communities (chronosequence) can differ.

successional stage. The stage in a vegetation chronosequence at a given site. Syn. sere,

surficial deposit Unconsolidated material deposited on the earth's surface and that covers the underlying bedrock.

swamp A mineral-rich wetland characterized by a cover of deciduous or coniferous trees.

tableland An upland area that is essentially flat.

- tallgrass prairie A mesic prairie maintained by fire; containing an assemblage of large grasses such as Androgon gerardii, Sorgastrum nutans and Panicum virgatum, as well as a variety or other species. Tallgrass prairie species are also found in some savannah and woodland habitats.
- tall shrub. A shrub species that has the potential to grow > 2 m tall, or that forms part of a community in which at least some of the individuals are > 2 m tall.
- talus. A collection of fallen, disintegrated rock material that has formed a pile at the foot of a steep slope.

taxon Any taxonomic unit within a classification system.

terrace A relatively level bench that is created, and occurs, within river valleys. Sometimes sharp or low breaks occur between individual terrace surfaces. These features are formed during a period of fluvial stability followed by a period of down-cutting by a stream.

terrain See topography.

- terrestrial Pertaining to land as opposed to water. Specifically referring to the community where the water table is rarely or briefly above the substrate surface and there has not been the development of hydric soils.
- texture The relative proportion of various particle sizes such as sand, silt, clay and coarser materials in a mineral soil sample. The Canadian System of Soil Classification describes the basic textural classes (clay, silty clay, sandy loam, etc.).
- thicket A terrestrial vegetation type that is characterized by < 10% tree cover and > 25% tall shrub cover.
- thicket swamp. A wetland vegetation type that is characterized by < 10% tree cover and > 25% tall shrub cover.

till Unstratified drift, deposited directly by a glacier without being reworked by meltwater.

topsoil The rich, active, uppermost part of the soil profile that is used for agricultural purposes.

topography The physical features of an area such as a land shape and relief.

tree A woody plant usually with a single main stem and capable, under the right conditions, of reaching heights of several metres or more.

treed A community with a tree cover of > 10%.

undergrowth All the shrubs, herbaceous plants and bryophytes growing under a canopy.

understorey Vegetation growing beneath taller plants such as trees or tall shrubs.

uneven-aged Of a forest, stand or forest type in which intermingling trees differ markedly in age.

upland A general term for an area that is higher in elevation than the surrounding landscape.

UTM Grid: The Universal Transverse Mercator Grid System used by the USA for military map projections of the entire world between 80°N and 80°S. Grid lines are equidistant anywhere in the world and are divided into unique zones. Each zone is sub-divided into 100 km squares. Grid references can be used to describe any location to the desired degree of precision. Reference is given to the zone and square (UTMZ), and easting (UTME) and northing (UTMN) locates any point.

valley Hollow or low-lying area associated with a river or stream, bounded by distinct slopes rising to the surrounding tableland.

valley slope The sloping walls of a distinct valley associated with a river or stream.

vegetation The general cover of plants growing on the landscape. The total of the plant communities of a region.

vegetation structure The vertical stratification associated with a plant community.

vegetation type An abstract vegetation classification unit, based on the species present in a site. The most detailed level in the Southern Ontario ELC.

water table The upper surface of the water saturation zone.

wetland An area of land that is saturated with water long enough to promote hydric soils or aquatic processes as indicated by poorly drained soils, hydrophytic vegetation and various kinds of biological activity that are adapted to wet environments. This includes shallow waters generally < 2 m deep.

wildlife All wild mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, fishes, invertebrates, plants fungi, algae, bacteria and other wild organisms. Often used to refer specifically to fauna.

wildlife habitat Habitat providing food or shelter for wildlife for a significant part of their life cycle.

windfall A tree uprooted or broken off by wind; areas containing such trees.

woodland A treed community with 35 to 60% cover of coniferous or deciduous trees.

xeric Describes a dry site.

xerophyte Plants that grow on dry sites.

young A seral stage of a plant community that has not yet undergone a series of natural thinnings and replacements. Plants are essentially growing as independent individuals rather than as members of a phytosociological community.



Appendices

Appendix A: Data Codes

There are standardized sets of codes available for bird, butterfly, herpetofauna, mammal, fish, and plant species. These codes are available from the ELC database application found at the following internet web site:

http://www.mnr.gov.on.ca/MNR/nhic/veg/lists/elc.html

Using these codes will allow practitioners to be efficient at data collection, data entry and data management. Furthermore, using these codes will provide consistency with the ELC program, the Natural Heritage Information Centre and the new centralized data repository. the Natural Resources Values and Information System (NRVIS).

Appendix B: Plant Species List

List of plant species referred to in this manual. List alphabetized by common name.

COMMON NAME SCIENTIFIC NAME

Alnus spp.

Alternate-leaved Dogwood

Cornus alternifolia L.f. American Lotus Nelumbo lutea (Willd.) Pers. Aspen Populus tremuloides Michaux Balsam Fir Abies balsamea L. Miller Balsam Popiar Populus balsamifera L.

Basswood Tilia americana L. Beachgrass Ammophila breviliquiata Fern Beaked Sedge

Carex utriculata F. Boott Bedstraws Galium spp.

Beech Fagus grandifolia Ehrh. Bellwort Uvularia grandiflora Smith Big Bluestem Andropogon gerardii Vitman Bitternut Hickory Carya cordiformis (Wang.) K. Koch

Black Ash Fraxinus nigra Marshall Black Cherry Prunus serotina Ehrh.

Black Maple Acer saccharum Marhsall ssp. nigrum (Michaux f.) Desmarais

Black Oak Quercus velutina Lam.

Black Spruce Picea mariana (Miller) Britton, Sterns & Pegg

Black Walnut Juglans nigra L. Black Willow Salix nigra Marshall Bladderwort Utricularia spp.

Blue Cohosh Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michaux

Bluebead Lily Clintonia borealis (Aiton) Raf.

Blueberry Vaccinium spp.

Bluejoint Calamagrostis canadensis (Michaux) P. Beauv.

Bluets Hedyotis longifolia (Gaertner) Hook. [=Houstonia longifolia]

Bog Buckbean Menyanthes trifoliata I Bog Rosemary Andromeda polifolia L. Bracken Fem Pteridium aquilinum (L.) Kuhn Bristle-leaved Sedge Carex eburnea Boott

Bristly Sarsaparilla Aralia hispida Vent. Buffalo Berry

Shepherdia canadensis (L.) Nutt. Bugleweed

Lycopus spp.

Bulblet Fern Cystopteris bulbifera (L.) Bernh.

Bullhead Lily Nuphar spp. Bulrush Scirpus spp. Bunchberry

Comus canadensis L. Bur Oak Quercus macrocarpa Michaux

Bur-reed Sparganium spp. Bush Honeysuckle Diervilla lonicera Miller Butternut Juglans cinerea L.

Buttonbush Cephalanthus occidentalis L.

Calla Lily Calla palustris L. Canada Bluegrass Poa compressa L. Canada Goldenrod Solidago canadensis I Canada Mayflower

Maianthemum canadense Desf. Cattail

Typha spp.

Chinquapin Oak Quercus muehlenbergii Engelm.

Chokeberry Aronia melanocarpa (Michaux) Elliott [= Pyrus melanocarpa]

Chokecherry Prunus virginiana L. Cinnamon Fern Osmunda cinnamomea L.

Cliffbrake Pellaea spp.

Clubrush Scirpus hudsonianus (Michaux) Fern. and S. cespitosus L.

Coltsfoot Tussilago farfara L.

Common Hair Grass Deschampsia flexuousa (L.) Trin.

Common Juniper Juniperus communis L.

Cotton-grass Eriophorum spp.

Cottonwood Populus deltoides Bartram ex Marshall Cow-wheat

Melampyrum lineare Desr.

Juniperus horizontalis Moench Creeping Juniper Cylindric Anemone Anemone cylindrica A. Gray Dense Blazing-star Liatris spicata (L.) Willd. Dalibarda repens L. Dewdrop Viburnum rafinesquianum Schultes Downy Arrow-wood Lemna spp. Duckweed Betula pumila L. Dwarf Birch Quercus prinoides Willd. Dwarf Chinquapin Oak Rubus pubescens Raf. Dwarf Raspberry Saxifraga virginiensis Michaux Early Saxifrage Larix decidua Miller European Larch Trichostema brachiatum L. [= Isanthus brachiatus] False Pennyroyal Fen Birch Betula pumila L. Carex oligosperma Michaux Few-seeded Sedge Equisetum arvense L. Field Horsetail Lonicera villosa (Michaux) Roemer & Schultes Fly Honeysuckle Tiarella cordifolia L. Foam Flower Fowl Manna Grass Glyceria spp. Fragrant Sumac Rhus aromatica Aiton **Fringed Buckwheat** Polygonum cilinode Michaux Alliaria petiolata (Bieb.) Cavara and Grande Garlic Mustard Polygala paucifolia Willd. Gaywings Coptis trifolia (L.) Salisb. Goldthread Ratibida pinnata (Vent.) Barnhart Gray Coneflower Cornus foemina Miller ssp. racemosa (Lam.) J.S. Wilson [C. Gray Dogwood Elymys lanceolatus (Scribner & J.G. Smith) Gould ssp. psammophilus Great Lakes Wheat-grass (J.M. Gillett & Senn) A. Löve [=Agropyron psammophilum] Fraxinus pennsylvanica Marshall Green Ash Celtis occidentalis L. Hackberry Solidago hispida Muhlenb. Hairy Goldenrod Harebell Campanula rotundifolia L. Hawthorn Crataegus spp. Carex siccata Dewey [= C. foenea] Hay Sedge Hedwigia ciliata (Hedw.) P. Beauv. Hedwig's Moss Tsuga canadensis (L.) Carriere Hemlock Hepatica spp. Hepaticas Geranium robertianum L. Herb Robert Carya spp. Hickory Vaccinium corymbosum L. Highbush Blueberry Hop-tree Ptelea trifoliata L. Horsetail Equisetum spp. Huckleberry Gaylussacia baccata (Wang.) K. Koch Hybrid Poplar Populus x Sorghastrum nutans (L.) Nash Indian Grass Dryopteris intermedia (Muhlenb. ex Willd.) A. Gray Intermediate Wood Fern Vernonia missurica Raf. Ironweed Ostrya virginiana (Miller) K. Koch Ironwood Jack Pine Pinus banksiana Lambert Jack-in-the-pulpit Arisaema triphyllum (L.) Schott Japanese Larch Larix leptolepis (Sieb. & Zucc.) Gord. Impatiens spp. Jewelweed Phryma leptostachya L. Jumpseed Juniperus communis L. and Juniperus horizontalis Moench Juniper Poa pratensis L. Kentucky Bluegrass Athyrium filix-femina (L.) Roth Lady Fem Large-leaved Aster Aster macrophyllus L. Populus grandidentata Michaux Largetooth Aspen

Chamaedaphne calyculata (L.) Moench

Osmorhiza longistylis (Torrey) DC.

Vaccinum angustifolium Aiton

Asplenium trichomanes L.

Black Ash, Green Ash, Red Ash

Schizachyrium scoparium (Michaux) Nees [= Andropogon scoparius] Calamovilfa longifolia (Hook.) Scribner var. magna Scribner & Merr. includes Carex chordorrhiza Ehrh., C. limosa L., C. livida (Wahlenb.)

Acer negundo L. Manitoba Maple Acer spp. Maple Dryopteris marginalis (L.) A. Gray Marginal Wood Fem Marsh Fem Thelypteris palustris (Salisb.) Schott Marsh Marigold Caltha palustris L. Podophyllum peltatum L. May Apple Spiraea spp. Meadowsweet Mountain Holly Nemopanthus mucronatus (L.) Loes. Acer spicatum Lam. Mountain Maple Mitella nuda L. Naked Mitrewort Viburnum lentago L. Nannyberry Euthamia graminifolia (L.) Nutt. [=Solidago graminifolia] Narrow-leaf Goldenrod Physocarpus opulifolius (L.) Maxim. Ninebark Allium cemuum Roth **Nodding Onion** Sporobolus heterolepis (A. Gray) A. Gray Northern Dropseed Picea abies (L.) Karsten Norway Spruce Quercus spp. Oak Gymnocarpium dryopteris (L.) Newman Oak Fem Solidago ohioensis Riddell. Ohio Goldenrod Ohio Spiderwort Tradescantia ohiensis Raf. Matteucia struthiopteris (L.) Tod. Ostrich Fem Pale Corydalis Corydalis sempervirens (L.) Pers. Panicum spp. Panic Grass Partridgeberry Mitchella repens L. Asimina triloba (L.) Dunal Paw-paw Carex pensylvanica Lam. Pennsylvania Sedge Panicum philadelphicum Bernh, ex Trin. Philadelphia Panic Grass Pontederia cordata L. Pickerel-weed Quercus palustris Muenchh. Pin Oak Pine Pinus spp. Lechea intermedia Legg. Pinweed Pitch Pine Pinus rigida P. Mill. Pitcher Plant Sarracenia purpurea L. Rhus radicans L. Poison Ivv Poison Sumac Rhus vemix L. Pondweed Potamogeton spp. Populus balsamifera L. and Populus grandidentata Michaux Poplar Danthonia spicata (L.) P. Beauv. ex. Roemer & Schultes **Poverty Grass** Praine Dock Silphium terebinthinaceum Jacq. Spartina pectinata Link Prairie Slough Grass Zanthoxylum americanum Miller [= Xanthoxylum americanum] Prickly Ash Prickly Gooseberry Ribes cynosbati L. Raspberry Rubus spp. Rubus idaeus L. Raspberry Fraxinus pennsylvanica Marshall Red Ash Red Cedar Juniperus virginiana L. Sambucus pubens (Michaux) House Red Elderberry Red Maple Acer rubrum L. Red Oak Quercus rubra L. [= Q. borealis] Red Pine Pinus resinosa Sol. ex Aiton Red Spruce Picea rubens Sarg. Cornus stolonifera Michaux Red-osier Agrostis gigantea Roth Red-top Reed-canary Grass Phalaris arundinacea L. Rice Cut-grass Leersia spp. Richardson's Muhly Grass Muhlenbergia richardsonis (Tnn.) Rydb. Minuartia michauxii (Fenzl) Farw. [=Arenaria stricta] Rock Sandwort Rough-leaved Mountain-Rice Oryzopsis racemosa (Smith) Ricker ex A. Hitchc. Round-leaved Dogwood Comus rugosa Lam. Royal Fem Osmunda regalis L Running Strawberry Bush Euonymus obobata Nutt. Rush Grass Phragmites australis (Cav.) Trin ex Steudel [= P. communis] Rusty Woodsia Woodsia ilvensis (L.) R. Br. Sand Cherry Prunus pumila L. Sassafras Sassafras albidum (Nutt.) Nees Scotch Pine Pinus sylvestris L. Scribner's Panic Grass Panicum oligosanthes Schultes

215

Leatherleaf

Low Sedge

Lowland Ash

Little Bluestern

Long-leaved Reed Grass

Long-styled Sweet Cicely

Low Sweet Blueberry

Maidenhair Spleenwort

Sea Rocket Cakile edentula (Bigelow) Hook.

Carex spp. Sedge Sedges Carex spp. Onoclea sensibilis L. Sensitive Fern

Serviceberry Amelanchier spp. Carya ovata (Miller) K. Koch Shagbark Hickory

Desmodium glutinosum (Muhlenb. ex Willd.) DC. ex Loudon Showy Tick-trefoil

Shrubby Cinquefoil Potentilla fruticosa L. Quercus shumardii Buckley Shumard's Oak

Comus amomum Miller ssp. obliqua (Raf.) J.S. Wilson [= C. obliqua] Silky Dogwood

Silver Maple Acer saccharinum L. Slender Sedge Carex lasiocarpa Ehrh.

Slender Wheat-grass Elymus trachycaulus (Link) Gould in Shinn. [Agropyron trachycaulum]

Vaccinium oxycoccus L. Small Cranberry

Vibumum dentatum L. var. lucidum Ait [= V. recognitum] Southern Arrow-wood

Spicebush Lindera benzoin (L.) Blume

Eleocharis spp. Spike Rush

Dryopteris carthusiana (Villars) H.P. Fuchs Spinulose Wood Fern

Spotted Touch-me-not Impatiens capensis Meerb. Trientalis borealis Raf. Starflower Carex sterilis (Carey) Gl. Sterile Sedge

Urtica dioica ssp. Procera Muhlenb. ex. Willd. Stinging Nettle

Stonewort Chara spp.

Sugar Maple Acer saccharum Marshall, ssp. saccharum

Sumac Rhus typhina L. and R. glabra L.

Sundews Drosera spp.

Swamp Maple Acer x freemanii E. Murr. [rubrum x saccharinum]

Swamp Red Currant Ribes triste Pall. Quercus bicolor Willd. Swamp White Oak

Comptonia peregrina (L.) Coulter

Sweet Fern

Sweet Gale Myrica gale L.

Sweet White Clover Melilotus alba Medikus

Panicum virgatum L. Switchgrass Platanus occidentalis L. Sycamore Larix Iaricina (DuRoi) K. Koch Tamarack

Threesquare Scirpus pungens M. Vahl [= S. americanus]

Trilliums Trillium spp.

Deschampsia cespitosa (L.) P. Beauv. **Tufted Hairgrass**

Liriodendron tulipifera L. Tulip Tree

Cladium mariscoides (Muhlenb.) Torrey Twig-rush

Velvet-leaf Blueberry Vaccinium myrtilloides Michaux

Violets Viola spp.

Virginia Creeper Parthenocissus spp.

Water Lily Nymphaea spp.

Megalodonta beckii (Torrey ex Sprengel) E. Greene [= Bidens beckii] Water Mangold

Water Milfoil Myriophyllum spp.

Heteranthera dubia (Jacq.) MacMillan Water Star-grass Decodon verticillatus (L.) Elliott Water Willow

Nasturtium officinale R. Br. Ex Aiton and N. microphyllum (Boenn.) Watercress

Reichb.

Waterweed Elodea spp. Fraxinus americana L. White Ash White Avens Geum canadense Jacq. White Birch Betula papyrifera Marshall White Cedar Thuia occidentalis L. White Elm Ulmus americana L. White Oak Quercus alba L. White Pine Pinus strobus L.

White Snakeroot Eupatorium rugosum Houtt. White Spruce Picea glauca (Moench) Voss

Trillium grandiflorum (Michaux) Salisb. White Trillium

Populus alba L.

Wild Blue Flag Iris versicolor L.

Vallisneria americana Michaux Wild Celery Wild Geranium Geranium maculatum L. Wild Ginger Asarum canadense L. Wild Grape Vitis riparia Michaux

Wild Leek Wild Sarsaparilla Wild-rice Willow Winterberry Wintergreen Wood Ferns Wormwood Yellow Birch Zig-zag Goldenrod

Allium tricoccum Aiton Aralia nudicaulis L. Zizania spp. Salix spp.

llex verticillata (L.) A. Gray Gaultheria procumbens L.

Dryopten's spp.

Artemisia campestris L. ssp. caudata (Michaux) H.M. Hall & Clements

Betula allegheniensis Britton

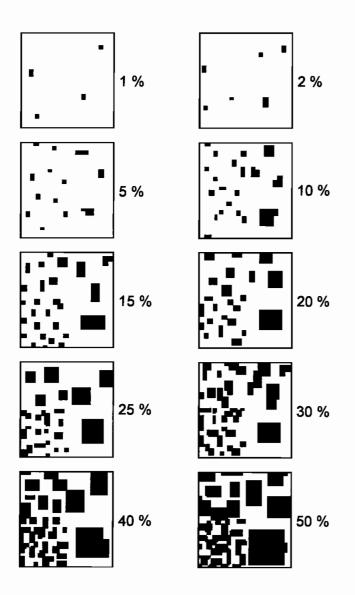
Solidago flexicaulis L.

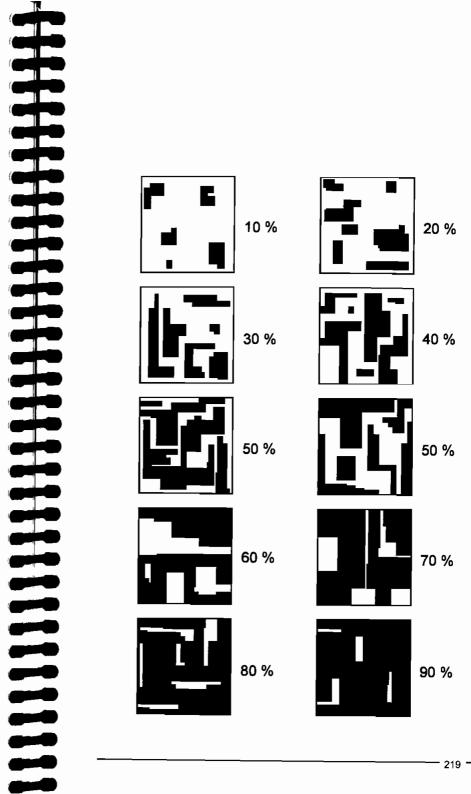
217

White Poplar

Appendix C: Area Percentage Charts

The following charts represent a tool to assist practitioners in estimating area percentages. These charts are an excerpt from OIP (1985).





Appendix D: Using a Wedge Prism

Wedge prisms are sighting tools traditionally used to estimate basal area and volume of wood. Here the wedge prism is also used to give an objective estimate of the relative dominance of tree species within a polygon (i.e., stand composition).

The wedge prism is a wedge of glass which bends, or deflects, light by a given critical angle (Figure 27). When sighting trees with a wedge prism, the image of the trunk of a tree appears offset from the natural image (Figure 28). The tool is used by counting trees, by species, whose diameters are equal to, or greater than, the fixed critical angle (i.e., the **Prism** Factor) of the prism (Figure 29).

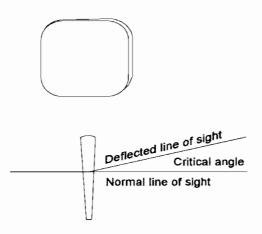


Figure 27. Diagram showing the wedge prism and how it deflects light by a critical angle.

Using the Wedge Prism

Select a location in the polygon where tree composition will be measured. This is the sample point. The location of the sample point should be selected in a random or stratified random manner, so that the tree composition is representative of the polygon. The prism is maintained at eye height and is kept directly over the sample point while doing a 360° sweep. Look through the wedge prism at each tree within eye sight around the sample point, aimed at breast height (1.3 m). If the diameter at breast height (DBH) of the tree is equal to or larger than the critical angle, the tree is counted in the sample, by species (see Figures 28 and 29). When viewing the tree through the wedge prism, the tree stem will appear to be offset or displaced (Figure 28). If the displacement is within the tree stem the tree is counted in the sample, otherwise it is omitted. A general rule for borderline trees is to consider every second borderline tree, for a particular species, as being counted within the sample.

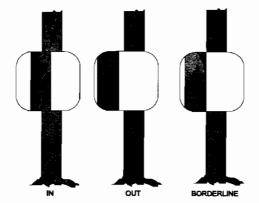


Figure 28. Diagram showing how to determine whether a tree is IN, OUT or BORDERLINE.

HIHHHIST STREET

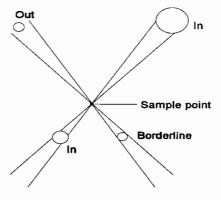


Figure 29. Diagram showing how the critical angle of the wedge prism is used to judge whether a particular tree is counted as IN, BORDERLINE or OUT when doing a sweep around a sample point.

Important things to consider:

1. Positioning: It is important to maintain the prism over the sample point through the entire 360° sweep. That is, the prism remains stationary, the pivot point by which the body of the practitioner rotates around. The prism also has to be maintained at a 90° angle (perpendicular) to the line of sight, on level ground (Figure 30). Failure to maintain the prism directly over the sample point at 90° will result in an incorrect tree count.

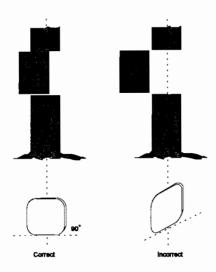


Figure 30. Diagram showing why the prism needs to be maintained at a 90° angle (perpendicular) to the line of sight.

- Correcting for slope: A tree may appear to be out when viewed on a steep slope.
 When on a steep slope, the slope distance exceeds the horizontal distance to the tree,
 thus causing incorrect count estimates. To correct for the longer slope distance, rotate
 the prism through an angle equal to the angle of the ground slope (Figure 31).
- 3. Hidden or leaning trees: Determining whether a hidden tree is in or out should be avoided. The best way to solve this problem is to anticipate; check for hidden trees before the prism sweep is done and move the sample pont to avoid hidden trees if necessary. To determine whether a leaning tree is counted, rotate the prism to make the sides of the prism parallel to the tree stem.
- 4. Prism factor: Wedge prisms are available in various sizes, according to different prism factors. As the prism factor gets larger the critical angle of the prism increases. For the purposes of general reconnaissance and determining stand composition, the critical angle of the prism should be kept at a minimum to avoid emphasizing only larger trees. When applying the ELC, a wedge prism with a 2x prism factor is recommended.

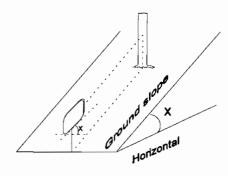


Figure 31. Diagram showing how to compensate for slopes when counting trees using the wedge prism. Rotate the prism to match the angle (i.e., x) between the ground slope and the horizontal.

Appendix E: New Ecosite and Vegetation Type Report Card

Copies of this New Ecosite and Vegetation Type Report Card should be filled in and submitted when the community does not fit any of the documented community types for Southern Ontario listed in the ELC Community Tables.

A completed set of field cards must be attached.

Submit the card to:

Harold Lee
The Southern Region ELC Working Group
Ministry of Natural Resources
Southern Region Science and Technology Transfer Unit
659 Exeter Road
London, Ontario
N6E 1L3

Site Region:		Site District:		
Name:				
Affiliation:				
Address:				
email : Telephone:				
Project:				
Project Polygon or Reference Number:				
UTMZ:	UTME:		UTMN:	
Air-photo Information:	Year:		Season:	
	#:			
	Year:		Season:	
	#:			
ELC System:				
Community Class:				
Community Series:				New Y:N
Ecosite:				New Y:N
Vegetation Type:				New Y : N

See Over

Other Similar Ecosites:
Explain Differences:
Other Similar Vegetation Types:
Explain Differences:
Other Comments:
Completed Field Cards Enclosed: Stand and Soil Characteristics Community Description and Classification Plant Species List Management / Disturbance Wildlife

224

225

